



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

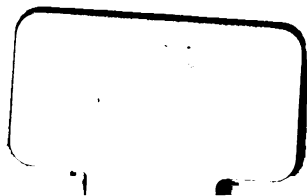
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

THE
NEW
EDITION
OF
THE
HISTORY
OF THE
CITY OF
NEW-YORK
FROM
1624 TO 1812



600090152N



YOUNG BEGINNER'S LATIN COURSE.

Part III.

EASY EXERCISES ON THE LATIN SYNTAX,

WITH

THE PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX, VOCABULARIES,
EXAMINATION PAPERS, AND AN ENGLISH-LATIN :
DICTIONARY TO THE EXERCISES.

EDITED BY

WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.

For the Use of Young Persons.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1891.

305. 9. 159*

LONDON:
PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
STAMFORD STREET AND CHANCING CROSS.



P R E F A C E.

THIS Work is the third and last of a short series, intended for the use of Young Beginners in Latin. It is designed to meet a want expressed by many teachers for simpler and easier Exercises in Latin Syntax than those given in Part IV. of the 'Principia Latina.' It has been drawn up by Mr. W. Dodds, Principal of Cambridge House School, Bradford, and provides a short and easy course of systematic exercises on the principal Rules of Latin Syntax, which may be commenced as soon as the pupil has mastered the Accidence. It claims to be the easiest Exercise book on the Syntax that can be placed in the hands of Beginners, and contains all that is really needful to meet the requirements of elementary examinations in the subject, while serving as a stepping-stone to other and more advanced manuals.

The Exercises consist almost exclusively of English renderings of easy sentences from the classical authors, introducing ideas at once familiar and constantly occurring in Latin, and so arranged as to present but one difficulty at a time, and to require a knowledge of those constructions only which have been previously explained.

The Notes, which are more numerous than in similar works of this class, have been suggested by the questions and difficulties of various pupils who have worked through the Exercises for a period of three years prior to their publication, and supply explanations on points where, as a long experience of teaching little boys has shown, mistakes are very likely to be made.

A separate Vocabulary is given with each Exercise, so that the Teacher can readily ascertain whether the words have been thoroughly learnt beforehand, and not merely looked out as required. As a rule, no word is given more than once in the Vocabularies. If it has been forgotten, it can be found by means of the English-Latin Dictionary at the end of the book.

CONTENTS.

EXERCISE	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1
I. AGREEMENT OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE ..	3
II. ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT	3
III. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE	4
IV. AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT	5
V. APPPOSITION	6
THE NOMINATIVE CASE:—	
VI. COMPLEMENTARY NOMINATIVE AFTER <i>Esse</i> ..	7
VII. COMPLEMENTARY NOMINATIVE AFTER OTHER COPULATIVE VERBS	8
THE ACCUSATIVE CASE:—	
VIII. ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME	9
IX. ACCUSATIVE OF MEASURE OF SPACE	9
X. ACCUSATIVE OF TWO OBJECTS	10
XI. COMPLEMENTARY ACCUSATIVE	11
XII. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING AN ACCUSATIVE ..	12
ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE:—	
XIII. (1) PRESENT TENSE, VERBS INTRANSITIVE AND TRANSITIVE	13
XIV. (2) THE VERB <i>Esse</i>	14
XV. (3) PERSONAL PRONOUNS	15
XVI. (4) TENSES OF INFINITIVE, (a) SIMPLE TENSES	16
XVII. (5) TENSES OF INFINITIVE, (b) COMPOUND TENSES	17
XVIII. (6) VERBS OF 'HOPING' AND 'PROMISING' ..	18

EXERCISE	PAGE
XIX. (7) NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS	19
XX. (8) IMPERSONAL EXPRESSIONS	19
CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS:—	
XXI. (1) PLACE <i>Whither?</i> (TO A PLACE)	20
XXII. (2) PLACE <i>Where?</i> (AT A PLACE)	21
XXIII. (3) PLACE <i>Whence?</i> (FROM A PLACE)	22
THE GENITIVE CASE:—	
XXIV. POSSESSIVE GENITIVE	23
XXV. GENITIVE AFTER 'MARK,' 'DUTY,' &C. ..	24
XXVI. SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE ..	25
XXVII. GENITIVE OF QUALITY	26
XXVIII. GENITIVE OF VALUE	27
XXIX. PARTITIVE GENITIVE	28
XXX. GENITIVE AFTER 'TO PITY,' 'REMEMBER,' 'FORGET'	29
XXXI. GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS OF FEELING	30
XXXII. GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE	31
XXXIII. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES	32
THE DATIVE CASE:—	
XXXIV. DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE	33
XXXV. DATIVE WITH TRANSITIVE VERBS OF 'GIVING,' 'TELLING,' 'SHOWING'	34
XXXVI. DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVE VERBS OF 'PLEASEING,' 'HELPING,' &C.	35
XXXVII. DATIVE AFTER COMPOUNDS OF <i>Sum</i>	36
XXXVIII. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES	37
XXXIX. PREDICATIVE DATIVE OF PURPOSE	37
THE ABLATIVE CASE:—	
XL. ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT AND PERSONAL AGENT	38

CONTENTS.

vii

EXERCISE	PAGE
XLI. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS ..	39
XLII. ABLATIVE OF TIME	40
XLIII. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	41
XLIV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (<i>continued</i>)	43
XLV. ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON	44
XLVI. ABLATIVE OF PRICE	45
XLVII. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY	46
XLVIII. VERBS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE	47
XLIX. DIRECT QUESTIONS	49
L. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	50
<i>Ut</i> WITH SUBJUNCTIVE:—	
LI. (1) SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE	51
LII. (2) VERBS OF 'ASKING,' &C.	52
LIII. (3) VERBS OF 'FEARING'	53
LIV. <i>Quin</i> WITH SUBJUNCTIVE (1)	55
LV. <i>Quin</i> WITH SUBJUNCTIVE (2)	56
LVI. <i>Quin</i> WITH SUBJUNCTIVE (3)	57
LVII. <i>Quominus</i> WITH SUBJUNCTIVE	58
LVIII. THE GERUND	59
LIX. THE ATTRIBUTIVE GERUNDIVE	61
LX. THE GERUNDIVE FOR THE GERUND	62
LXI. IMPERSONAL GERUNDIVE	64
LXII. SUPINES	65
EXAMINATION PAPERS	66
Vocabularies	71
ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY	92



EASY EXERCISES

ON THE

LATIN SYNTAX.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

SUBJECT. PREDICATE. OBJECT. COMPLEMENT.

§ 1. A **Simple Sentence** is the complete expression of a single thought, and contains one Finite Verb; as, 'The dog runs.'

§ 2. A Simple Sentence has two parts, the Subject and the Predicate.

§ 3. The **Subject** is that which denotes what we speak about; as, 'The dog.'

§ 4. The **Predicate** is that which is said about the Subject; as, 'runs.'

§ 5. The Subject, in its simplest form, is a Noun or Pronoun.

§ 6. The Predicate, in its simplest form, is a Finite Verb.

Subject.
The dog
We

Predicate.
runs.
read.

§ 7. When the Predicate is a Transitive Verb, the predication is often without a complete meaning until a word is added to denote the person or thing upon which the Verb acts. This is called the **Object**.

Thus, 'Romulus founded' is deficient in sense until we add the word 'Rome.'

§ 8. The Object of a Transitive Verb, in its simplest form, is a Noun or Pronoun.

Subject.	Predicate.	Object.
Romulus	founded	Rome.
He	sees	me.

§ 9. Sometimes there are two Objects, a Direct or Nearer and an Indirect or Remoter; as, 'The father gave the boy a book,' where 'book' is the **Direct Object**, and 'boy' the **Indirect Object**.

§ 10. Again, some Verbs cannot by themselves form complete Predicates, but require some other word to be used with them to make the sense complete. Of this kind are the Intransitive Verbs 'be,' 'become,' 'remain,' 'seem,' and such Transitive Verbs as 'make,' 'call,' 'deem,' 'think.'

Verbs of this kind are called **Verbs of Incomplete Predication**, and the words used with them to make the predication complete are called the **Complement of the Predicate**, both together forming the Predicate; thus,—

Subject.	Predicate.		Object.
	Verb of Incomplete Predication.	Complement of Predicate.	
The mountains	are	high	
The man	seems	feeble	
The boy	becomes	a sailor	
Solon	was called	wise	
The Greeks	called	wise	Solon

I.—AGREEMENT OF SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

§ 11. The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case.

§ 12. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in Number and Person.

I read.	We read.
<i>Ego lægo.</i>	<i>Nos lægimus.</i>
You write.	You write.
<i>Tu scribis.</i>	<i>Vos scribitis.</i>
The master teaches.	The masters teach.
<i>Magister docet.</i>	<i>Magistri docent.</i>

EXERCISE I.

1. Time flies. 2. Riches increase. 3. The tree is growing.
4. The water flows. 5. The boys are-ill.¹ 6. The arms will be taken-up. 7. The shepherd sings. 8. Thou² teachest: we² learn.
9. The boys will be taught. 10. The one³ reads, the other³ writes.
11. The soldiers will fight bravely. 12. Virtue and⁴ honesty are⁵ praised.
13. Balbus and Caius (they) are-taking-a-walk. 14. Balbus and I⁶ (we) are-taking-a-walk. 15. You and Balbus (ye) were reading.
16. Women, children, and old-men (they) are slain. 17. Some⁷ are blamed, others⁷ are praised. 18. He fell there.
19. The parents laughed.⁸ 20. One⁹ conquers, another is conquered.

1. English words joined together by a hyphen, like 'are-ill,' 'are-taking-a-walk,' 'old-men,' &c., are to be translated by a single Latin word. 2. Since in Latin the pronoun subjects are implied in the person endings, they are often omitted; but when, as in this sentence, there is a distinction or contrast between persons to be expressed, the personal pronouns must be used. In the following exercises the pupil will always be informed when the personal pronouns are required. 3. 'The one . . . the other,' alter . . . alter. 4. 'And' is translated by *et* or *atque* between two nouns or pronouns, or by *que* appended to the latter. In this book the pupil must always use *et*, unless directed

in the notes to employ *atque* or *-que*. 5. When two or more subjects are joined together by *et*, the verb is of the plural number. 6. When the subject consists of two nouns or pronouns of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third. Observe further, that the Latins arrange these nominatives in the exact order of the persons, placing the first before the second, and the second before the third. 7. 'Some . . . others,' *alii . . . alii*, plural of *alius*, a, ud. 8. Use the perfect ending in -ere, instead of -erunt. 9. 'One . . . another,' *alius . . . alius*.

II.—ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT.

§ 13. Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Direct Object.

Scatter roses, *Sperge rosas.*

I saw you, *Te vidi.*

EXERCISE II.

1. Romulus slew Remus. 2. The army crossed¹ the river. 3. Romulus founded Rome. 4. Temples adorn the towns. 5. Caesar restored the hostages. 6. Caesar routed the enemy.² 7. The Romans send colonists. 8. One (man) exhorts another. 9. The priest struck-down the victim. 10. I³ expelled kings: ye³ are bringing-in despots. 11. Birds build nests: men build houses. 12. I saw neither⁴ the king nor the queen. 13. You⁵ are reading a book: he⁶ (is reading)⁷ a letter. 14. The farmer tills the fields: (his) wife takes-care-of the house. 15. You³ lost Tarentum: I³ retook (it). 16. You⁸ and he⁶ and I³ (we) raised (our) hands. 17. Both you and Balbus (you) raised (your) hands. 18. Both Caius and Balbus (they) raised (their) hands. 19. Tarquinius Priscus subdued the Sabines. 20. Autumn follows summer.

1. In the compounds of ire (to go), the *v* of the perfect is almost always left out.
2. Plural. 3. Use the pronouns. 4. 'Neither...nor,' nec...nec. 5. Tu. In the course of the following exercises translate 'you' and 'your' by the singular

unless the sense requires the plural, or an intimation is given that the plural is to be used. 6. Illa. 7. Words enclosed in parentheses () are not to be translated. 8. See note 6, Ex. I.

III.—AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 14. Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns, whether in the Subject or Predicate, agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case.

A brave soldier.

Fortis miles.

Beautiful women are loved.

Mulieres pulchrae amantur.

He has a sweet apple.

Dulce pomum habet.

EXERCISE III.

1. Grey hairs will come. 2. I saw the brave consul. 3. Crassus had fortified¹ his² camp. 4. The merchant repairs (his) shattered ships. 5. I shall sing no songs. 6. I have received your letter. 7. Numa waged no war. 8. A new city has been founded.³ 9. Many soldiers were taken. 10. The bad⁴ are blamed: the good⁴ are praised. 11. The citizen has two sons and three daughters. 12. Labour overcomes all⁴ (things). 13. Idle boys are beaten. 14. The enemy were conquered. 15. The king and

queen have set-out.⁵ 16. The diligent farmer plants many trees. 17. Caesar undertook a civil war. 18. These boys will read my books. 19. A dumb⁴ (man) speaks not,⁶ a deaf (man) hears not, a blind (man) sees not. 20. The Romans used-to-worship⁷ many gods.

1. In the perfect tenses of verbs of the fourth conjugation *v* is often omitted before *s* and *t*, thus *muniērat* for *muniēverat*. 2. Use *suis*, *a*, *um* for 'his, her, its,' if you can insert 'own' in the English. Here 'his camp' means 'his-own camp.' 3. The perfect participle used in forming the perfect tenses of the passive voice agrees in number and gender with the

subject of the verb. 4. A masculine adjective is often used without a noun to denote persons; and a neuter adjective to denote things. 5. When the genders differ, adjectives and participles agree with the masculine rather than with the feminine. 6. *Non* always precedes the verb. 7. The imperfect tense is often used of what was wont to be done.

IV.—AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

§ 15. The Relative *qui*; *quae*, *quod* agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case depends on its own clause.

[*Obs.* The Antecedent is the word which has gone before the Relative (*ante*, 'before,' and *cedo*, 'I go'), and to which the Pronoun refers; as, 'I saw the man who gave him the book'; 'he who is virtuous is happy.' In the first example 'who' refers to the noun 'man,' and 'man' is called the Antecedent of the Relative 'who.' In the second, 'who' refers to the pronoun 'he,' and 'he' is the Antecedent of the Relative 'who.']

God, who created us, governs the world.

Deus, qui nos creavit, mundum gubernat.

The women, whom you see, are grieving.

Mulieres quas vides dolent.

Obs. In the first example, *Deus* (3rd pers. masc. sing.) is Antecedent, and Subject (nom.) to *gubernat*; *qui* (3rd pers. masc. sing.) is Subject (nom.) to *creavit*.

In the second, *mulieres* (3rd pers. fem. plur.) is Antecedent, and Subject (nom.) to *dolent*; *quas* (3rd pers. fem. plur.) is Object (acc.) of *vides*; and the Relative is governed by the Verb following.

EXERCISE IV.

1. God, whom¹ we worship, governs the world. 2. I have read the letters which² you wrote. 3. Cicero has a daughter whom he loves. 4. I am present whom you seek.³ 5. I see a bridge which spans the river. 6. We worship God who created us. 7. Caesar, who waged many wars, subdued Gaul. 8. (He) conquers who suffers. 9. The soldiers, whom you see, have been wounded. 10. I see a woman who is selling apples. 11. You, who praise Balbus, blame Caius. 12. He⁴ who did this will be punished. 13. They rebuilt the towns which they had burnt. 14. I re-

turned⁵ the gifts which I had received. 15. That⁶ which I have (once) said, I will not alter. 16. I see the men whom we expelled yesterday. 17. The slave, whom you see, will shut the gate. 18. I hear what⁷ you say. 19. The soldier, whom I am praising, fought bravely. 20. This is the boy whom I used-to-praise.

1. 'Whom' is objective case in English, and accusative in Latin. 2. When 'which' stands next the verb in English, it is nominative; but when it is separated from the verb by one or more words, it is objective in English, and if not preceded by a preposition must generally be put in the accusative in Latin: e.g. in the sentence 'I see a bridge which spans the river,' 'which' is nominative; but in the sentence 'I have read the

letters which you wrote,' 'which' is accusative. The gender and number of the relative must be the same as that of the antecedent. 3. Plural. 4. 'He who' is qui. Begin with qui, and say, 'Who did this, he (is) will be punished.' 5. Perfect. 6. 'That which,' id quod. Begin with quod and say, 'Which I have said, that (is) I will not alter.' 7. 'What' here means '(the things) which,' (ea) quae, the antecedents being omitted.

V.—APPOSITION.

§ 16. Substantives that stand in apposition to one another agree in Case.

[Obs. Substantives are said to be in apposition when one is appended to the other to explain or limit it.]

Cicero, a great orator, was slain.

Cicero magnus orator interfectus est.

Alexander killed Clitus, his dearest friend.

Alexander carissimum amicum Clitum occidit.

EXERCISE V.

[The words that stand in apposition to one another are printed in italics.]

1. Romulus and Remus founded the city (of) Rome.¹ 2. Caesar, a most renowned general,² subdued Gaul. 3. We follow you (as our) leader. 4. Brutus killed Caesar, (his) dearest friend. 5. Numa, a most just king, waged no war. 6. (I) Hannibal³ sue-for peace. 7. The Egyptians worship the dog and cat as deities. 8. Procas the king had two sons, Numitor and Amulius. 9. We⁴ boys will imitate (our) father Lollius. 10. Lucius Sulla and Lucius Murena, two very brave men and excellent generals,² waged many wars. 11. Miltiades, (as) leader, routed the Persians. 12. The king slew⁵ Balbus, a Roman citizen. 13. I, a Roman citizen, did this.⁶ 14. Troy, a strongly-fortified⁷ city, has been taken. 15. Rome, a great city, has many temples. 16. I⁴ defended the commonwealth (as) a young-man. 17. Cicero (as) consul summoned the senate. 18. Mausolus the king had a wife⁸ (named)

Artemisia. 19. Manlius slew⁹ his son, though conqueror.¹⁰
 20. *Lysander, the Spartan general*,¹¹ took Lampsacus.

1. 'City' and 'Rome' are in apposition to one another and must be put in the same case. 2. Imperator. 3. 'Hannibal' is in apposition with ego, the pronoun subject understood. 4. Use pronoun. 5. Interficio. 6. The word 'thing' is

understood after 'this.' 7. Use the superlative of the Latin word for 'fortified.' 8. Conjux. 9. Occido. 10. The son was conqueror, therefore 'son' and 'conqueror' are in apposition. 11. Dux.

VI.—COMPLEMENTARY NOMINATIVE.

(SUBJECTIVE COMPLEMENT.)

§ 17. When a Verb of Incomplete Predication is Intransitive or Passive, the Complement of the Predicate is in the Nominative.

"Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming,*
 With Passive Verbs of *making, calling, deeming.*"

The principal of these is the Verb *Sum*.

Britain is an island.

Britannia est insula.

Virtue is its-own reward.

Virtus est sua merces.

EXERCISE VI.

1. Troy was¹ a strongly-fortified city. 2. Anger is a short madness. 3. I² am an unfortunate man.³ 4. Better is certain peace than hoped-for victory. 5. This is my book, that⁴ (is) yours. 6. Economy is a great revenue. 7. Pain, if severe, is short; if long-continued, slight. 8. Nothing (is) good, except what⁵ (is) honourable. 9. Dear are parents, dear is country. 10. This girl is my sister. 11. The apples, which we are eating, are very sweet. 12. The women, whom you see, are very beautiful. 13. Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise. 14. Yonder⁶ is the horse which I bought. 15. The soldier, whom I am praising, is very brave. 16. Death is certain, time uncertain. 17. I am now a farmer, formerly I was¹ a soldier. 18. These boys, whom the master⁶ always blames, are very sad. 19. There-is⁷ a God who hears and sees what we do.⁸ 20. Custom is a second⁹ nature.

1. Perfect. 2. Use pronoun. 3. Homo. 4. Ille. 5. Quod. 6. 'A master (who teaches),' magister; (who owns), dominus. 7. 'There-is,' est. 8. Gero. 9. Alter.

VII.—COMPLEMENTARY NOMINATIVE—*continued.*

§ 18. Other Verbs besides *Sum* which take a Complementary Nominative are:—

- (1.) Verbs which signify *to become*; as, *fio, evado, nascor.*
- (2.) Verbs which denote *a state or mode of existence*; as, *maneo.*
- (3.) The Passives of Verbs of *naming, making, appointing*; as, *appellor, creor, declaror, dicor, vocor.*
- (4.) Verbs signifying *to seem or be thought*; as, *videor, habeor.*

No-one becomes good by-chance.

Nemo fit casu bonus.

Cicero was declared consul.

Cicero declaratus est consul.

EXERCISE VII.

[The Complementary Nominative is printed in italics.]

1. Cicero was created *consul*. 2. Aristides was considered ¹ *most just*. 3. Sulla was appointed *dictator*. 4. The old-man seems *sad*. 5. Numa was made ² *King*. 6. You ³ indeed will remain *poor*. 7. The boy wishes to become *a poet*. 8. We cannot all become *philosophers*. 9. The king is named *Numa*. 10. The fortifications will remain *entire*. 11. I am-anxious to become *a Roman citizen*. 12. No-one becomes *utterly-base* ⁴ all-at-once. 13. The lion is called ⁵ *the king* of quadrupeds. 14. No-one is born ⁶ *wise*. 15. Many dreams turn-out *true*. 16. The army has remained *entire*. 17. Caesar, a most skilful general, becomes *Dictator*. 18. Socrates is called ⁷ *the parent* of philosophy. 19. One ⁸ (man) desires to be esteemed *the most elegant*, another ⁹ *the most learned*. 20. Brutus, because he expelled kings, was made *the first consul*; this (man), because he expelled consuls, was ultimately made *King*.

1. Use Imperfect to denote continuous action. 2. Creō. 3. Tu. 4. Use the superlative of turpis. 5. Vocor. 6. Present tense. 7. Dicor. 8. Ille.

VIII.—ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME.

§ 19. Duration of Time is put in the Accusative in answer to the question, *For how long?*

Numa reigned forty-three years.

Numa tres et quadraginta annos regnavit.

This Accusative is also used after *natus* (masc.), *nata* (fem.), 'born,' expressing age.

Valerius was created consul at the age of twenty-three.

Valerius annos tres et viginti natus consul creatus est.

EXERCISE VIII.

1. The sick girl has slept for¹ seven hours. 2. Lions live many summers and many winters. 3. The bear sleeps all² the winter. 4. The poet's father lived for ninety years. 5. Romulus reigned thirty-seven years. 6. Troy, a strongly-fortified city, was besieged for ten years. 7. Plato lived eighty-one years. 8. The city (of) Rome had been besieged in-vain for six months. 9. Some³ insects live (but) one day. 10. At-the-age-of thirty⁴ he had already waged many wars. 11. He remained there twenty years. 12. He reigned for a few months. 13. Appius was⁵ blind for many years. 14. Dionysius was⁶ the tyrant of the Syracusans for thirty-eight years. 15. We dream whole nights. 16. The matrons mourned Brutus for a year. 17. Alcibiades died about the age of forty.⁷ 18. My dear⁸ daughter is ten years old.⁹ 19. Dionysius seized the government at the age of twenty-five years. 20. Socrates was-put-to-death at-the-age-of seventy.⁴

1. In expressions of time, 'for' and 'during' are not to be translated. 2. Say, 'the whole winter.' 3. Quidam, quaedam, quoddam. 4. Supply annos.

5. Fuit. 6. Superlative. 7. Natus (masc.), nata (fem.) must agree with the name of the person, in gender, number, and case, like an adjective.

IX.—ACCUSATIVE OF MEASURE OF SPACE.

§ 20. Measure of Space is put in the Accusative, in answer to the questions 'How long?' 'How broad?' 'How high?' 'How deep?' 'How thick?' 'How far?'

The ditch is ten feet broad.

Fossa decem pedes est lata.

The river was three feet deep.

Flumen erat tres pedes altum.

10 EASY EXERCISES ON THE LATIN SYNTAX.

The town is five miles from Carthage.

Oppidum abest a Carthagine millia passuum quinque.

EXERCISE IX.

1. The spear is *five feet* long.¹ 2. The tower is *two hundred feet* high. 3. The nightingale is *six inches* long. 4. The wall is *three miles*² in-length.³ 5. The ice is already *four inches* thick. 6. The columns are (each) *ten*⁴ feet in-height. 7. The walls of Babylon were⁵ (each) *two hundred feet* high. 8. He ran a ditch *sixteen feet* deep.⁶ 9. The garden is *three hundred feet* in-length, (and) *a hundred feet* in-breadth. 10. The citizens are building a wall *thirty feet* high and *three feet* broad. 11. They built⁷ a wall *two hundred feet* high. 12. The soldiers threw-up a mound *three hundred feet* wide and *eighty feet* high. 13. The temple was⁸ *six hundred feet* in-length, (and) *two hundred* in-breadth. 14. The plain (of) Marathon is *ten miles* from⁹ Athens. 15. Caesar pitches (his) camp *three miles* from the city.⁹ 16. Caesar pitched (his) camp *two miles* from the camp of the Helvetii. 17. Caesar was-at-a-distance of⁵ *twelve miles* from the territories of the Gauls. 18. Our soldiers were-at-a-distance of⁵ *twenty miles* from the camp of the enemy.¹⁰ 19. The town is⁸ *three hundred miles* from Rome. 20. Italy is *one hundred and twenty miles* from Sardinia, (and) Sardinia is⁸ *two hundred miles* from Africa.

1. It is important to remember that the numerals (when declined) are to be put in the accusative along with the measures of space, 'feet,' 'miles,' &c., but that the adjectives 'long,' 'broad,' 'high,' 'deep,' &c., must agree with their nouns 'wall,' 'ditch,' &c., in number, gender, and case. 2. 'Three miles:' say, 'three thousands of paces,' *tria millia passuum*; *millia* being a noun (not an adjective) of the third declension, having the numeral agreeing with it in number, gender, and case, and governing the noun *passuum* in

the genitive. 3. 'In-length,' 'in-breadth,' 'in-height:' say, 'long,' 'broad,' 'high.' 4. 'Ten (each),' *deni*, *se,* a, distributive numeral, declined like the plural of *bonus*, a, um. 5. Imperfect. 6. Remember that 'deep' must be made to agree in case with 'ditch.' 7. Omit *se* in *aedificaverunt*. 8. 'To be (at a distance) from' = *abesse* a before consonants, and *abesse ab* before vowels and *h*, followed by an ablative case; e.g. 'Is ten miles from Rome,' *abest a Româ millia passuum decem*. 9. 'From the city,' *ab urbe*. 10. Plural.

X.—ACCUSATIVE OF TWO OBJECTS.

(DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE)

§ 21. Verbs of 'teaching,' 'concealing,' and some Verbs of 'asking,' 'entreating,' and 'demanding,' take two Accusatives, one of the Thing and another of the Person.

Who taught you letters?

Quis te litteras docuit?

The boy concealed nothing from his father.
Puer patrem nihil celavit.

I never asked the gods for riches.
Nunquam divitias deos rogavi.

EXERCISE X.

1. I will teach *you music*. 2. He conceals *nothing* from ¹ *us*. 3. Jugurtha begged ² *peace of the Romans*. 4. Why do you ask *me* for *this*? 5. We demand ³ *peace of you*. 6. Caesar demands ⁴ *corn of the Aedui*. 7. The ambassadors beg ³ *peace from Caesar*. 8. He taught *the boys the elements* (of learning). 9. The tribune asked *me* (my) *opinion*. 10. Experience, the best master, has taught *me many* (things). 11. My son has not concealed *these* (things) from *me*. 12. Why have you concealed ⁵ *this* from *me*? 13. Why have you not informed *me* of *this*? 14. I have not kept from *you* the men's *discourse*. 15. My master will teach *me many* (things). 16. Do not ask ⁶ (your) *father* for *money*. 17. Do not conceal ⁶ *these* (things) from (your) *father*. 18. I shall not conceal from *you* the *discourse* of Titus Ampius. 19. Do not ask ⁶ *me* for (my) *opinion*. 20. Caesar demands ⁴ *a sum-of-money* from *Balbus*.

1. In 'ask-for,' 'conceal-from,' 'beg-of,' 'demand-of,' &c., the English prepositions 'for,' 'of,' 'from,' &c., are not to be translated. 2. Rogo. 3. Posco. 4. Flāgito. 5. Use *celasti* for *celavisti*. 6. In

prohibitions or warnings against doing something, use the perfect subjunctive with *ne*, when a particular person is addressed.

XI.—COMPLEMENTARY ACCUSATIVE.

(OBJECTIVE COMPLEMENT.)

§ 22. When a Verb of Incomplete Predication is Transitive and in the Active Voice, the Complement of the Predicate is in the Accusative.

We make thee, O Fortune, a goddess.
Te facimus, O Fortuna, deam.

Romulus called his city Rome.
Romulus urbem suam Romam vocavit.

The people declared Cicero consul.
Ciceronem consulem populus declaravit.

EXERCISE XI.

1. Avarice renders *men blind*. 2. The Roman people elected ¹ *Numa king*. 3. The whole ² state declared *me consul*. 4. The

plebeians elected¹ *Clodius* tribune. 5. They call² *me* your teacher. 6. Attalus constituted the Romans heirs of his⁴ kingdom and⁵ riches. 7. Appius Claudius chose⁶ the sons of freedmen (as) senators. 8. Cato had⁷ *Valerius Flaccus* (for) a colleague. 9. They saluted⁸ *Octavius* (as) *Caesar*. 10. Aristotle styled the universe God. 11. Balbus made no-one rich. 12. This grove Romulus made an asylum. 13. The coward calls⁹ himself wary, the mean (man) thrifty. 14. Amulius made *Rhea Silvia*, the daughter of Numitor, priestess of Vesta. 15. I deem *Socrates* very wise. 16. Caesar appointed *Octavius* (his) heir. 17. I count you learned and prudent. 18. The Romans called² the Emperor *Titus* the darling of the human race. 19. Socrates used-to-consider himself an inhabitant and citizen of the whole¹⁰ world. 20. The Athenians choose¹¹ (as) leaders of the war, *Pericles*, a man¹² of tried virtue, and *Sophocles*, the writer of tragedies.

1. Singular collective nouns like *populus* and *plebs* generally take singular predicates. 2. *Universus*. 3. *Appello*. 4. *Suus*, a, um. 5. *Atque*. 6. *Lego*. 7.

Perfect of *habeo*. 8. Imperfect. 9. *Voco*. 10. *Totus*. 11. *Eligo*. 12. *Vir* is used instead of *homo* to express fame and dignity.

XII.—PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING AN ACCUSATIVE.

§ 23. The following prepositions govern an Accusative Case:—

“*Ante*, *apud*, *ad*, *adversus*,
Circum, *circa*, *citra*, *cis*,
Contra, *inter*, *erga*, *extra*,
Infra, *intra*, *juxta*, *ob*,
Pone, *pone*, *post* and *praeter*,
Prope, *propter*, *per*, *secundum*,
Supra, *versus*, *ultra*, *trans*;

*To these let super, subter be appended,
 With in and sub if motion be intended.”*

[Obs. *In* and *sub* with the Accusative answer to the question ‘Whither?’]

EXERCISE XII.

1. Hannibal routed¹ *Sempronius Longus* at the (river) *Trebia*. 2. Caesar led-back (his) army into the camp. 3. *Rullus* seized the cities around *Capua*. 4. Beneath the moon (there) is nothing not mortal. 5. The guardianship of the world is in-the-power-of God. 6. He loves none beside himself. 7. Hannibal marched² towards³ *Rome*. 8. The Roman legions set-out against⁴ the Gauls. 9. *Ancus Martius* fought against⁵ the Latins. 10. Before the Second Punic War (there) had been many famous⁶ generals.⁷ 11. The Gauls dwell on-this-side the Rhine. 12. The *Aedui* sent ambassadors to

Caesar. 13. Orgetorix was by-far the noblest and richest (man) *among* the Helvetii. 14. Caesar led (his) army *along* the river. 15. Horses run *through* the woods and fields. 16. The city (of) Troy was besieged for ten years *on-account-of* one woman. 17. Caesar pitched (his) camp *close-to* the wall. 18. Mount Jura is *between* the Helvetii and the Sequani. 19. Atticus was buried *close-to* the Appian Way. 20. After Romulus Numa was made king.

1. Profligo. 2. Contendo. 3. Versus | versus. 5. Contra. 6. Say, 'many and is put after the word it governs. 4. Ad- | (ac) famous generals.' 7. Imperator.

XIII.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

1. PRESENT TENSE, VERBS INTRANSITIVE AND TRANSITIVE.

§ 24. The Accusative and Infinitive are used in Latin after Verbs of 'saying,' 'hearing,' 'seeing,' 'perceiving,' 'knowing,' and the like.

This construction is called Indirect Statement.*

In English we generally use a clause introduced by the Conjunction 'that'; *e.g.*

The husbandman ploughs.	(Direct.)
He says that the husbandman ploughs.	(Indirect.)
A good father loves his sons.	(Direct.)
No-one will deny that a good father loves his sons.	(Indirect.)

To turn such sentences into Latin,

- (1.) Prefix the Verb of 'saying,' &c.
- (2.) Omit 'that.'
- (3.) Change the English Nominative into the Latin Accusative.
- (4.) Change the English Indicative into the Latin Infinitive.

The husbandman ploughs.		(Direct.)
<i>Agricola arat.</i>		
He says that the husbandman ploughs.		(Indirect.)
<i>Dicit — agricolam arare.</i>		

* Statement is Direct when the very words or thoughts of the writer or speaker are given in his own person; as, "I have read the books," said the boy.

Statement is Indirect when only the substance of what the speaker has said is given; as, 'The boy said that he had read the books.'

14 EASY EXERCISES ON THE LATIN SYNTAX.

A good father loves his sons.

Bonus pater filios suos amat.

(Direct.)

No-one will deny | that | a good father loves his sons.

Nemo negabit | — | *bonum patrem filios suos amare.* (Indirect.)

EXERCISE XIII.

1. (We) all know that (his) *father grieves*. 2. We hear that *the pupils laugh*. 3. They see that *the judges are sitting*. 4. I know that *these boys play*. 5. I see that *many girls dance*. 6. (We) all see that *the sun shines*. 7. Who¹ does not know that *this girl dances*? 8. Boys know that *birds build*² *nests*.³ 9. He will hear that *you are ploughing* the fields.³ 10. I see that *no-one goes-out*. 11. He knows that *I am present*.⁴ 12. He sees that *few*⁵ *go-out*. 13. The daughter will hear that (her) *mother grieves*. 14. We see that *the mother loves* her daughter.⁶ 15. No-one will deny that *our soldiers fight*⁶ bravely. 16. Caesar says that *the Gauls fight* very bravely. 17. Who¹ does not-know that *these girls write letters*?³ 18. The master sees that *many boys play*. 19. Who does not-know that *the king is building*⁷ a very large house?³ 20. Caesar sees that the soldiers *are fighting* bravely.

1. Quis. 2. Pono. 3. The accusative of the Nearer Object in the *that*-clause remains in the accusative. 4. 'To be | present,' *adesse*. 5. Masculine. 6. *Pugno*. 7. *Aedifico*.

XIV.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—continued.

2. THE VERB *esse*.

§ 25. The Complementary Nominative of Verbs of Incomplete Predication is also changed into the Accusative.

Sicily is an island.

Sicilia est insula.

(Direct.)

I know | that | Sicily is an island.

Solo | — | *Siciliam esse insulam.* (Indirect.)

EXERCISE XIV.

1. They say that *the way is long*. 2. We know that *life is short*. 3. We all know that *men are mortal*. 4. They say that *the corn*¹ *is ripe*. 5. I know that *the soldier is honest*. 6. We perceive² that *snow is white*. 7. He says that *the boys are ill*. 8. We know that *death is not an evil*. 9. No-one will deny that *the judge is severe*.³ 10. The boy says that *the girl is ill*. 11. Philosophers say that

life is a dream. 12. I perceive *that your brother is a brave (man).*
 13. He sees *that you are happy.* 14. I know *that I am honest.*
 15. We know *that we are faithful.* 16. Democritus says *that there-are countless worlds.* 17. We all know *that our soldiers are very brave.* 18. We know *that we are mortal.* 19. Who does not-know *that all good (men) are happy?* 20. You see *that this little girl is blind.*

1. Seges. 2. Sentio. 3. Severus. 4. Intellego.

XV.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—*continued.*

8. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 26. After the Conjunction ‘that,’—

‘he,’ ‘she,’ ‘they’ = *se*,

whenever they stand for the same person as the Subject of the Verb of ‘saying,’ &c.

But,—

‘he,’ ‘she,’ ‘they’ = *eum, eam, eos, eas*,

if the second pronoun denotes a different person from the first; *e.g.*

He says	that	he is fighting.
<i>Dicit</i>	—	<i>se pugnare.</i>
But, We say	that	he is fighting.
<i>Dictamus</i>	—	<i>eum pugnare.</i>

Note.—The Pronoun subjects so often omitted in Direct Statement must always be inserted in Indirect Statement; *e.g.*

(He) is writing.	
<i>Scribit.</i>	(Direct.)
But, He says	that he is writing.
<i>Dicit</i>	— <i>se scribere.</i>
	(Indirect.)

EXERCISE XV.

1. Balbus says *that he knows.* 2. I say *that he knows.* 3. Caius says *that she is ill.* 4. I know *that he is ill.* 5. He says *that he (himself) does this.* 6. Tullius says *that he is honest.* 7. I say *that she is very timid.* 8. We say *that they understand.* 9. He

says that *he understands*. 10. He denies that *he is ill*. 11. Who does not-know that *they wage* many wars? 12. We all know that *we wage* many wars. 13. No-one will deny that *he is very foolish*. 14. You¹ say that *they are conquering*. 15. I perceive² that *he is a very brave (man)*. 16. We all know that *they often write letters*. 17. We say that *he is conquering*. 18. We say that *we love*³ justice. 19. He denies that *he is pretending*. 20. Who does not-know that *they are pretending*?

1. Use the pronoun. 2. Intellego. 3. Dilligo.

XVI.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—*continued*.

4. TENSES OF INFINITIVE—(a) Simple Tenses.

§ 27. The Latin Infinitive must be of the same tense as the English Verb would be if the sentence were turned into Direct Statement; *e.g.*

- (1.) He says that he is writing
= He says, "I am writing." (Present.)
 - (2.) He said that he was writing
= He said, "I am writing." (Present.)
 - (3.) He said that he had written
= He said, "I have written." (Perfect.)
 - (4.) He said that he would write
= He said, "I shall write." (Future.)
- (1) *Dicit se scribere.*
 - (2) *Dixit se scribere.*
 - (3) *Dixit se scripsisse.*
 - (4) *Dixit se esse scripturum.*

EXERCISE XVI.

1. Balbus said that *he was*¹ ready. 2. The lieutenant-general said that *he had waged*² many wars. 3. He said that *the enemy were crossing*³ the river. 4. I said that *I had read* the books. 5. I say that *I have read* the books. 6. He thought⁴ that *the ambassadors had departed*. 7. We hear that *he is come*.⁵ 8. The boy confessed *having done it*.⁶ 9. The father boasted of *having done it*.⁷ 10. We replied that *they had waged* many wars. 11. Caesar said that *he came*, (and) *saw*, (and) *conquered*. 12. He said that *he was returning*.⁸ 13. He said that *he had returned*.⁸ 14. I hear that *you, a Roman citizen,*⁹ *have done this*. 15. Solon pretended *to be insane*.¹⁰ 16. History relates that *Troy was a strongly-*

fortified city. 17. Livy relates that *Hannibal crossed*¹¹ the Alps. 18. It was announced¹² that *Scipio was at-hand*. 19. Who has not heard that *Cicero wrote* many very beautiful orations? 20. Who does not know that *Hannibal led* a large army into Italy?

1. An English *past* tense in a *that*-clause will be translated by the *present* infinitive, if the time denoted by the two verbs is the same. 'He said that he was ready.' (When?—at the time of his speaking.) 2. The perfect infinitive is only used if the verb in the *that*-clause denotes a time prior to that of the verb of 'saying,' &c. 'He said that he had waged.' (When?—at some time earlier

than that at which he was speaking.) 3. Transeo. 4. Use the Imperfect to denote continuous action. 5. Say, 'we hear that he has come.' 6. Say, 'the boy confessed that he had done it.' 7. Say, 'the father boasted that he had done it.' 8. Redeo. 9. 'You' and 'Roman citizen' are in apposition. 10. Say, 'Solon pretended that he was insane.' 11. Supero. 12. Perfect Passive.

XVII.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—continued.

5. TENSES OF INFINITIVE—(b) Compound Tenses.

§ 28. The Participles of the compound tenses of the Infinitive must agree with their Nouns in Number and Gender.

The woman said that she would go.
Mulier dixit se ituram esse.

The men said that they would go.
Homines dixerunt se ituros esse.

I declare that we have been conquered.
Dico nos esse victos.

Note.—*Iri* (the present Infinitive Passive of *eo*) with the Supine in *um* forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive. The Supine, of course, remains unaltered.

I hear that the city is going to be fortified.
Audio urbem munitum iri.

EXERCISE XVII.

1. He answered that *he would go*. 2. He said that *he would return*.¹ 3. The soldier declared² that *he would conquer*. 4. He said that *the walls were going to be built*.³ 5. He saw⁴ that *he would not be safe*. 6. He says that *he* (himself) *will do this*. 7. He says that *they will go*. 8. I say that *the book has been read*. 9. I said that *the books had been read*. 10. I used-to-say⁴ that *I would read the books*. 11. He said that *the city would be taken*.³

12. They replied that *they would do* this. 13. I know that *letters*⁵ *have been sent*. 14. The soldier denied that *he had been conquered*. 15. I know that *we shall be conquered*.³ 16. Who does not-know that *you*⁶ *have been conquered*? 17. No-one knows that *the letter has been written*. 18. No-one will deny that *many wars have been waged*. 19. Who has not-heard that *many very beautiful orations have been written*? 20. Who does not-know that *the city has been taken*?

1. Redeo. 2. Dico. 3. Future Passive. | 4. Use Imperfect. 5. Epistola. 6. Plural.
See note at the head of this Exercise.

XVIII.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—continued.

6. VERBS OF 'HOPING' AND 'PROMISING.'

§ 29. After Verbs of 'hoping' and 'promising,' use the Future Infinitive.

He promised to come =
He promised that he would come.
Pollicitus est se esse venturum.

EXERCISE XVIII.

1. He hoped that *he would conquer*. 2. I hope to go.¹ 3. I hope to see² him. 4. He promised to come early. 5. They promised to give hostages. 6. She promised that *she would return*. 7. I hoped *you would be conquered*.³ 8. I promise to come. 9. The young-man hopes to live a-long-time. 10. You promised (*fem.*) that *you would come*. 11. We (*fem.*) promise to be faithful. 12. She promised to finish the business. 13. He promised that *he would fight* bravely for⁴ (his) native-land. 14. He hopes that *the affair will be finished*.³ 15. I hope to see² her to-morrow. 16. I hope that *the queen will return*. 17. I hope that *our soldiers will wage* many wars. 18. He promised that *he would read* my books. 19. Caius promised that *he would chastise* his son. 20. The Romans hoped⁶ to conquer Hannibal.

1. 'To go:' say, 'that I shall go.' 2. | Future Passive, *iri* with Supine in *was*.
'To see:' say, 'that I shall see.' 3. | 4. *Pro* with abl. 5. Imperfect.

XIX.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—*continued*.

7. NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS.

§ 30. Verbs of 'saying,' &c., when joined to a negative, are translated by the Verb of denial, *nego*; e.g.—

He says that he is not = He denies that he is.

He says that he does not = He denies that he does.

He says that he has not = He denies that he has.

He says that he has never = He denies that he has ever.

He says that he has done nothing = He denies that he has done anything.

He says that no-one has = He denies that any-one has.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. He says that *he does not know*. 2. He said that *he did not know*. 3. He says that *he does not understand*. 4. He says that *he does not believe*. 5. He says that *he has not sinned*. 6. He¹ (Balbus) says that *he* (Caius) *did not do this*. 7. He says that *he has never read this book*. 8. He says that *he is not ready*. 9. He said that *he would never do this*. 10. He says *he has done nothing*.² 11. He says *he has not done this*. 12. They said³ *they had never seen him*. 13. He said that *the senators were*⁴ *not wise*. 14. He said that *I was*⁵ *not honest*. 15. You say that *I was*⁶ *not wise*. 16. They said⁷ *they had never read the books*. 17. He says that *he is not a shepherd*. 18. He said that *no-one*⁸ *had come*. 19. Cato says that (it) *is not true*. 20. The deserters said⁹ *they would not return*.

1. Ille. 2. Neuter of quisquam. 3. Use the perfect ending in *-arunt*. 4. When?—at the time of his speaking.

5. When?—at some time earlier than that at which he was speaking. 6. Quisquam. 7. Imperfect.

XX.—ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE—*continued*.

8. IMPERSONAL EXPRESSIONS.

§ 31. The Accusative and Infinitive are used after such expressions as the following:—

Certum est, 'it is certain.'

Constat, 'it is agreed,' 'it is well known.'

Credibile est, 'it is credible.'

Justum est, 'it is just.'

Manifestum est, 'it is plain, evident.'

Necesse est, 'it is necessary.'

Verisimile est, 'it is probable.'

Verum est, 'it is true.'

After the same manner are used the following Locatives :
humi, on-the-ground ; domi, at-home ; ruri, in-the-country.

Caius dwells at Miletus.

Caius Mileti habitat.

He stays at-home.

Manet domi.

He lives in-the-country.

Vivit ruri.

EXERCISE XXII.

1. He died *at Carthage*. 2. Cicero was born *at Arpinum*, Horace *at Venusia*. 3. He lived eighteen years *at Rome*, (and) three months *at Corinth*. 4. Atticus lived many years *at Athens*. 5. They lived *at Gabii* more-than two years. 6. He taught¹ boys rhetoric *at Corinth*. 7. *At Ephesus* there-was² a splendid temple of Diana. 8. Cadmus scatters teeth *on-the-ground*. 9. My father will remain *at Capua* the whole winter. 10. Brutus learned philosophy *at Athens*, (and) eloquence *at Rhodes*. 11. Alexander, king of the Macedonians, died *at Babylon*. 12. I saw my friend *at Canusium, Laodicea, (and) Carthage*. 13. Caius lived for one year *at Veii*, and³ thence removed to Rome. 14. He will remain *at Brundisium* for two-years, and³ will thence set-out for Tarentum. 15. Pompey determined to winter *at Ephesus* and *Phocaea*. 16. The apples lie *on-the-ground*. 17. There-was⁴ one⁵ Arganthonius *at Cadiz*, who reigned eighty years, (and) lived one hundred and twenty. 18. I have lived *at Narbo, Delphi, Tarquinii, (and) Tarentum*. 19. Tarquinius Superbus died *at Cumae*. 20. Archimedes, a most distinguished mechanician, lived *at Syracuse*.

1. Imperfect. 2. Erat. 3. Atque. 4. Fuit. 5. 'One,' 'a certain (person),' quidam.

XXIII.—CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF TOWNS—continued.

3. ABLATIVE OF PLACE *Whence?—From a PLACE.*

§ 34. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns are put in the Ablative without a Preposition.

So also *domo*, from-home ; *rure*, from-the-country.

Regulus set-out from Carthage.

Regulus Carthagine profectus est.

Pompey departed from Rome.

Pompeius Romā discessit.

The boys returned from-the-country.

Pueri rure redierunt.

EXERCISE XXIII.

1. The Greeks set-out *from Troy*. 2. The consul set-out *from Rome* to Athens. 3. Caius returned *from-the-country* to Rome. 4. The Thebans departed ¹ *from Sparta*. 5. We shall set-out *from Carthage*, and return to Syracuse. 6. Balbus returned *from Ephesus* to Laodicea. 7. I see the old-man returning ² *from-the-country*. 8. Starting ³ *from-home*, we shall go into-the-country, and ⁴ remain there twenty days. 9. Dionysius sent-for Plato *from Athens*. 10. Timoleon sent-for colonists *from Corinth*. 11. We had already returned *from-the-country*. 12. The merchant sailed *from Syracuse* to Rhodes. 13. When Tullius returns ⁵ *from-the-country*, I ⁶ shall set-out *from-home*. 14. The Pompeians were obliged ⁷ to import fodder *from Corcyra*. 15. Demaratus, the father of king Tarquinius, fled *from Corinth* to Tarquinii. 16. Pompey sets-out *from Luceria* for Canusium, and ⁸ thence for Brundisium. 17. Caesar departed *from Tarraco*, and ⁹ came ⁹ on-foot thence to Narbo and ⁴ Massilia. 18. He stayed some-time at Corinth; *from Corinth* he proceeded ⁸ to Athens, and ¹⁰ lived there three years. 19. The orator Aeschines retired *from Athens*, and betook himself to Rhodes. 20. He departed *from Canusium* and returned to Veii.

1. Use the plural perfect ending in -ere for -brunt. 2. Present participle of redeo agreeing in case with senem. 3. Pro-ficiscor. 4. Atque. 5. Say, 'shall have

returned,' fut. perf. 6. Use ego. 7. Imperfect passive. 8. 'And ... on-foot,' pedibusque. 9. Pervenio. 10. 'And ... there,' ibique.

XXIV.—POSSESSIVE GENITIVE.

§ 35. The Genitive denotes the Possessor.

I have braved the swords of Catiline.
Contempsī Catilinæ gladios.

Juno was the wife of Jupiter.
Juno Jovis conjux erat.

EXERCISE XXIV.

1. A shepherd had broken a *goat's* horn. 2. Croesus was ¹ king of the *Lydians*. 3. Egerius was ¹ the son of the *king's* brother. 4. Scipio defeated *Hannibal's* forces. 5. The army of the *Athenians* was almost destroyed. 6. This *man's* daughter is deaf. 7. The father of the *winds* directs ² the ship. 8. Pan is the god of *Arcadia*. 9. The riches of the *Romans* were ¹ immense. 10. *Whose* is that ³ army? *Caesar's*. 11. Caesar led (his) army into the territories of the *Helvetii*. 12. The horns of the *moon* decrease. 13. There-were ⁴ many ⁵ famous orators before *Cicero's* time. ⁶ 14. All (things) which

were ⁴ *the woman's* become *the husband's*.⁷ 15. Romulus was ¹ the son of a *Vestal Virgin*. 16. The scouts of *Pyrrhus* were led through the Roman camp. 17. He promised ⁸ that he would read *Cicero's* orations. 18. The poets say ⁹ that Hector was son of *Priam, the Trojan king*. 19. Ariovistus led-forth his forces past ¹⁰ the camp of *Caesar*. 20. *Caesar's* lieutenant led the forces of *the Romans*.

1. Imperfect. 2. Rego. 3. Ille. 4. Perfect. 5. Say, 'many and (atque) famous.' 6. 'Time (age),' *aetas*. 7. Vir. 8. See

§ 29. 9. Trado. 10. 'Past,' *praeter* (prep.) with acc.;

XXV.—POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—continued.

GENITIVE AFTER *mark, duty, &c.*

§ 36. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the Verb *Sum*, to denote the person to whom belongs a mark, duty, part or property.

It is (the duty) of a shepherd to shear (his) sheep.
Pastoris est tondere oves.

EXERCISE XXV.

1. It is *the father's* (duty) to teach his son. 2. To despise riches is (a proof) of *a great and lofty mind*. 3. It is (the duty) of *Christians* to condemn avarice. 4. It is a *young-man's* (duty) to reverence ¹ elders. 5. It is (the duty) of *a Christian* to wrong nobody. 6. It is (the part) of *a king* to rule.² 7. It is (the mark) of *a fool* to despise advice. 8. It is *the slave's* (business) to shut the gates of the city. 9. It is *a king's* (duty) to execute the laws. 10. It is (the duty) of *the slave* to point-out the way. 11. It is (the part) of *a husbandman* to labour. 12. It is *a Christian's* (duty) to praise virtue. 13. It is (the duty) of *a wise* (man) to avoid needless expenses. 14. It is (the duty) of *a prudent* (man) to check the fervour of (his) benevolence. 15. To conduct ³ an affair ⁴ badly through ⁵ recklessness, is (a proof) of *folly*. 16. Nothing is (a proof) of so ⁶ narrow a mind ⁷ as ⁸ to love ⁹ riches. 17. To desert (one's) post out-of ⁵ fear is (an indication) of *cowardice*. 18. It is (the part) of *any* ¹⁰ man to err. 19. As ¹¹ it is (the part) of *parents* to educate (their) children well, so ¹² it is (the duty) of *children* to reverence ¹³ (their) parents. 20. To perceive ¹⁴ this, shows *prudence*; ¹⁵ to perform ¹⁶ (it), *bravery*.¹⁵

1. Vereor. 2. Impero. 3. Gero. 4. Rea. 5. Propter, prep with acc. 6. Tam. 7. Animus. 8. Quam. 9. Amo. 10. Quivis. 11. Ut. 12. Ita. 13. Colo. 14.

Sentio. 15. 'Shows prudence,' say, 'is (a mark) of prudence'; 'bravery,' say, 'is (a proof) of bravery.' 16. Facio.

XXVI.—SUBJECTIVE AND OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

§ 37. The Subjective Genitive denotes the doer of the action indicated by the Verbal Noun on which it depends, and takes the place of the Subject of a Verb; as,

Fuga Pompeii, 'Pompey's flight.'

[Obs. This may be turned into *fugit Pompeius*, 'Pompey flees,' where the Genitive Pompeii becomes the Subject Pompeius, who flees.]

§ 38. The Objective Genitive denotes the Object of the action expressed by the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the Object of a Verb; as,

Conditor urbis, 'the founder of the city.'

[Obs. This may be turned into *condidit urbem*, 'he founded the city,' where the Genitive urbis is replaced by the Accusative urbem, the Object of condidit.]

EXERCISE XXVI.

1. The leader of the enemy was slain.¹ 2. I² will not be the cause of thy death. 3. Helen was³ the cause of the Trojan war. 4. The sun is the light of the world. 5. We adore Jupiter the guardian of this city. 6. The recollection of past evils is pleasant. 7. Patience is the best remedy against⁴ pain. 8. Pleasure is an allurements to⁴ baseness. 9. The effect of eloquence is the approbation of the hearers. 10. Wisdom is the knowledge of things⁵ divine and human. 11. Prudence is the knowledge of things⁵ good and evil. 12. Riches,⁶ the incentives to⁴ evil (deeds), are dug-out (of the earth). 13. Speech is the interpreter of the mind. 14. The senses are not only⁷ the companions of virtues, but also the servants. 15. Alexander, the conqueror of so-many kings and⁸ nations,⁹ slew¹⁰ Clitus. 16. Sweet is the recollection of past labours. 17. Not the fear of punishment, but¹¹ the warning of duty, is the best incitement to⁴ virtue. 18. Money¹² is the source of many¹³ great pleasures. 19. Philosophy is the guide¹⁴ of life. 20. Ceres is said to have taught men the use of wheat.

1. Occido. 2. Use pronoun for emphasis. 3. Perfect. 4. An objective genitive must often be rendered in English by some other preposition than 'of.' 5. Res. 6. Opes. 7. 'Not only . . . but also,'

non solum . . . sed etiam. 8. Atque. 9. Populus. 10. Interficiō. 11. Sed. 12. Pecunia. 13. Say, 'many and (et) great.' 14. Dux.

XXVII.—GENITIVE OF QUALITY.

§ 39. A Substantive in the Genitive is joined to another Substantive to denote some quality.

This Genitive must always be accompanied by an Adjective.

A cow of marvellous size was born.

Bos mirae magnitudinis nata est.

Caius is a boy of great talent.

Caius est puer magni ingenii.

EXERCISE XXVII.

1. My slave is a man¹ of admirable fidelity. 2. He is a boy of high-bred countenance. 3. We all know that Sicily is an island of great fertility. 4. We sometimes see clouds of the colour of fire.² 5. Lucius is a youth³ of the highest⁴ birth.⁵ 6. Balbus is considered⁶ a man⁷ of great talent. 7. We have seen serpents of immense⁸ size. 8. My father was⁹ a man⁷ of very great stature.¹⁰ 9. It is well known¹¹ that Hannibal was a man⁷ of the greatest⁴ courage. 10. The name of Appius is of happier memory.¹² 11. The Latins brought¹³ into the Capitol a golden crown of small weight. 12. Caesar was considered¹⁴ (a man) of opposite parties. 13. (They) all say that the tribune of the soldiers is a man⁷ of great judgment and valour. 14. Cato was⁹ a man⁷ of old-fashioned severity. 15. Claudius was¹⁵ (a man) of very brief¹⁶ slumber. 16. The young-man¹⁷ turned-out¹⁸ (to be) of a disposition truly royal. 17. Lucius Torquatus was⁹ a man⁷ of the greatest¹⁹ courage,²⁰ of the greatest²¹ wisdom,²² (and) of singular constancy. 18. Mucius, a man⁷ of Roman constancy, accosted the Senate. 19. L. Marcius was⁹ a young-man¹⁷ of the highest¹⁹ spirit²⁰ and ability.²³ 20. You possess²⁴ a man of remarkable²⁵ modesty, well-known valour, (and) approved fidelity.

1. Homo. 2. Say, 'of a fiery colour.' 3. Adolescens. 4. Summus. 5. Nobilitas. 6. Present of habere. 7. Vir is used (instead of homo) to express fame and dignity: Complementary Nominative, see § 18. 8. Ingens. 9. Perfect. 10. 'Stature:' say, 'body,' corpus. 11. Constat with acc. and inf.; see § 31. 12. Memoria felix. 13. Use the perfect end-

ing in -ere instead of -erunt. 14. Imperfect of habere. 15. Imperfect. 16. Brevis. 17. Juvenis. 18. Evado; see § 18. 19. Maximus, a. um. 20. Animus. 21. Summus, a. um. 22. Consilium. 23. 'Ability:' say, 'talent.' 24. 'You possess:' say, 'you have.' 25. 'Remarkable:' say, 'singular.'

XXVIII.—GENITIVE OF VALUE.

§ 40. The Genitive of Value is used with Verbs of 'estimation,' 'buying,' and 'selling,' when the price is only indefinitely given as high or low.

The principal of these forms are :

Magni, 'at a great price'; *pluris*, 'at a greater price'; *mazimi*, 'at a very great price.'

Parvi, 'at a low price'; *minoris*, 'at a lower price'; *minimi*, 'at a very low price.'

Tanti, 'of so great price'; *quanti*, 'of what price.'

[Obs. With the above forms the Noun *pretii*, gen. of *pretium*, 'price,' appears to be understood.]

I value virtue highly.

Magni virtutem aestimo.

Virtue accounts pleasure of very little value.

Voluptatem virtus minimi facit.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. I value the field at a great price. 2. The avaricious (man) sets a great value on¹ wealth.² 3. The Christian will value money³ at a low price. 4. It is (the mark) of an unlearned (man) to value wisdom at a low price. 5. I hold the worthless (man) in very small esteem.⁴ 6. It is (the mark) of an avaricious (man) to value money⁵ at a great price. 7. The wise (man) will value virtue at a very great price. 8. The master thinks little-of⁶ the labour of (his) slave. 9. He sold corn⁶ at a lower price than you (did). 10. It is (the mark) of a foolish (man) to value pleasures very highly. 11. A wise (man) does not make pleasure of so much account as⁷ virtue. 12. It is (a mark) of an impious (man) to value virtue at a low price. 13. (My) father thinks highly-of⁸ my labour. 14. I value Plato highly, but⁹ Socrates more highly. 15. I value your¹⁰ authority very highly. 16. It is of greater value to act considerably than to think¹¹ prudently. 17. I hear that the house was valued at a higher price than the field (was). 18. A wise (man) will value virtue at a higher rate than pleasure.¹² 19. He bought the pleasure-ground at such a price as Pythius wanted. 20. I sell my corn⁶ not at a higher price than¹³ others,¹⁴ perhaps even at a lower.

1. 'To set a great value on : ' say, 'to value at a great (price).' 2. *Divitiae*. 3. *Pecunia*. 4. 'In very small esteem : ' say, 'at a very low (price).' 5. 'To think little of : ' say, 'to value at a low price.' 6. *Frumentum*. 7. 'Does not make pleasure of so much account as,' *voluptatem non tanti facit quanti*. Note that 'virtue' must be put in the accusative,

because the meaning is, 'he makes (values) virtue.' 8. 'To think highly of : ' say, 'to value at a great price.' 9. *Sed*. 10. *Vester*, *tra*, *trum*. 11. *Cogito*. 12. 'Pleasure' must be put in the accusative, because the meaning is, 'at a higher rate than he values pleasure.' 13. *Quam*. 14. *Ceteri*, *ae*, *a*.

XXIX.—PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

§ 41. The Partitive Genitive denotes the whole of which anything is a part.

Socrates was the wisest of all.

Omnium sapientissimus erat Socrates.

Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his (men).

Sulla centum viginti suorum amisit.

EXERCISE XXIX.

1. The Belgae are the bravest *of the Gauls*. 2. The lion is the bravest *of animals*. 3. Romulus was¹ the first king *of the Romans*. 4. Tarquinius Superbus was¹ the seventh and² last *of the Roman kings*. 5. Caius is the best and most just man³ *of all*. 6. It is well known⁴ that Socrates was the wisest *of the Greeks*. 7. (Our) native-land is the common parent *of us⁵ all*. 8. He preserves something⁶ *of (his) ancient strength*. 9. The form of man⁷ is the most beautiful *of all*. 10. He has riches enough⁸ who is contented. 11. Thirty thousand *of the Samnites* were slain⁹ or taken.⁹ 12. Aristotle calls¹⁰ friendship the most agreeable *of all human connections*. 13. Hannibal sent three pecks *of gold rings* to Carthage.¹¹ 14. Cyrus learnt-by-heart the names *of all his soldiers*. 15. Cato used-to-drink a very-little *cheap wine*.¹² 16. Justice requires no reward,¹³ no price. 17. Regulus was the first¹⁴ *Roman general* who crossed into Africa. 18. The triumph of Paullus Aemilius was¹ by-far the most splendid¹⁵ *of all*. 19. All good (men) agree that¹⁶ Jupiter is the king *of all gods and men*. 20. There is an infinite number¹⁷ *of people*,¹⁸ very numerous buildings, and a great number¹⁹ *of cattle*.²⁰

1. Perfect. 2. Atque. 3. Vir. 4. Constat with acc. and inf.; see § 31. 5. Of the genitives nostri, nostrum, and vestri, vestrum, those ending in -um are partitive. 6. Neuter of aliquis. 7. Genitive plural of homo. 8. Say, 'enough of riches.' 9. Caedo. Neuter plural of participle to agree with millia. Omit sunt. 10. Appello with complementary accusa-

tive; see § 22. 11. See § 32. 12. Say, 'a very little of cheap (villis) wine.' 13. Say, 'nothing of reward,' 'nothing of price.' 14. Say, 'Regulus crossed (trajicio) into Africa first of Roman generals,' and make 'first' agree with 'Regulus.' 15. Magnificus. 16. Acc. with inf. 17. Multitudo. 18. Homines. 19. Numerus. 20. Plural.

XXX.—GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. GENITIVE AFTER *to pity, remember, forget.*

§ 42. Most Verbs of 'pitying,' 'remembering,' and 'forgetting,' usually take the Genitive.

"After to 'pity,' 'remember,' 'forget,'
A Genitive Case is properly set."

Have pity on the slaves.

Miserere servorum.

The mind remembers the past (things).

Animus meminit praeteritorum.

They have forgotten their former valour.

Obliti sunt pristinae virtutis.

EXERCISE XXX.

1. I pity *my friend*. 2. He pities *us*.¹ 3. The boy forgot² his father's *commands*. 4. God himself³ bids us remember⁴ *death*. 5. He remembers *past misfortunes*.⁵ 6. A good man⁶ forgets *all injuries*. 7. God bids thee pity⁴ *the poor*.⁷ 8. I shall always remember *this day and place*. 9. I remember *the living*,⁷ nor can I forget *the dead*.⁷ 10. It is (a mark) of folly⁸ to discern the faults of others,⁹ (and) to forget *one's own*.¹⁰ 11. Let young-men¹¹ remember¹² *modesty*.¹² 12. It is (the duty) of a good (man) to forget *dissensions*. 13. We shall always pity *the poor*. 14. I remember *human weakness*. 15. All forgot (their) *wives*¹⁴ and *children*,¹⁵ nor did they remember¹⁶ *the war* and *its dangers*. 16. I remember, Plancius,¹⁷ I remember, nor¹⁸ shall I ever forget *that*¹⁹ (memorable) *night*. 17. The soldiers remembered¹⁶ not *the war* and (its) *dangers*, but *the plunder* and *the riches*. 18. I remember *the living*, nor²⁰ yet may I forget²¹ *Epicurus*. 19. A servant,²² who does not remember (his) *duty*, is worth little.²³ 20. Bocchus, king of Mauretania, pitied (the fate of) *his son-in-law Jugurtha*.

1. Use nostri, and see Ex. XXIX., note 5. 2. Perfect. 3. Ipse. 4. Infinitive. 5. Malum. 6. Vir. 7. Plural. 8. See § 36. 9. Alius. 10. Plural of sum. 11. Adolescens. 12. The subjunctive present is sometimes used instead of the imperative, especially in the third person singular or plural. In the same way is used the present perfect meminere-

rim. 13. Verecundia. 14. Conjun. 15. Que appended to the second noun. 16. The pluperfect of meminere has the meaning of an English past indefinite, or an ordinary imperfect. 17. Proper names in -ius make their vocative in -i. 18. Neque. 19. Ille. 20. Nec. 21. Say, 'nor yet is-it-allowed to forget.' 22. Servus. 23. 'Is worth little,' parvi est.

XXXI.—GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—*continued*.

2. GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS OF FEELING.

§ 43. The following five Impersonal Verbs take an Accusative of the Person, and a Genitive of the Cause of the Feeling :—

Piget, pudet, paenitet,

Taedet, atque miseret.

The boy is vexed at (his) carelessness.

Piget puerum negligentiae.

I am ashamed of the deed.

Pudet me facti.

You repent of (your) faults.

Te culparum paenitet.

We are weary of life.

Nos vitas taedet.

I pity that old-man.

Me miseret illius senis.

EXERCISE XXXI.

1. We pity *the man*.¹ 2. I am ashamed of *my carelessness*.²
3. I repent of (my) *sin*. 4. I am weary of *this business*. 5. God never repents of *his first design*. 6. He was ashamed³ of (his) *poverty*. 7. This man is ashamed of (his) *insolence*. 8. I pity *you*: I am vexed⁴ with *myself*. 9. They are not ashamed of *their*⁵ *infamy*. 10. I repent of *my anger*. 11. You⁶ are neither tired, nor ashamed of *your*⁷ *folly*. 12. He feels⁸ neither shame nor remorse for *his deed*. 13. Thou pitiest *others*; ⁹ for *thyself* thou hast neither pity nor shame.¹⁰ 14. I shall never repent¹¹ of *my actions*¹² and¹³ *designs*. 15. I am not only¹⁴ sorry¹⁵ for *my folly*, but also ashamed of (it).⁴ 16. You are ashamed of *your avarice*. 17. I shall never repent of *my wish*. 18. I am vexed at the *manners* of the state. 19. The slothful (man) will some-day-or-other repent of (his) *sloth*. 20. Neither we nor others¹⁶ shall repent¹⁷ of *our industry*.

1. Say, 'It pities us of the man.' 2. Say, 'It shames me of my carelessness.' 3. Imperfect. 4. Omit *me*. 5. *Suus*. 6. Say, 'It neither (neque) wearies nor (neque) shames you' (plural). 7. *Vester*. 8. Say, 'It neither shames nor repents

him of his deed.' 9. *Alius*. 10. Omit *te* with *pudet*. 11. Say, 'It will never repent me.' 12. *Factum*. 13. *Atque*. 14. See Ex. XXVI., note 7. 15. *Piget*. 16. *Alius*. 17. 'Neither us nor others will it repent,' &c.

XXXII.—GENITIVE AFTER VERBS—*continued*.

3. GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE.

§ 44. The Genitive is used after Verbs of 'accusing,' 'condemning,' 'convicting,' and 'acquitting,' to denote the fault or crime.

They accused Miltiades of treason.

Miltiadem proditiōnis accusaverunt.

Manlius was condemned to death.

Manlius capitis damnatus est.

The judge acquitted him of wrong-doing.

Judex absolvit injuriarum eum.

EXERCISE XXXII.

1. The master accused the boy *of theft*. 2. The boy was acquitted *of theft*. 3. They accuse Caius *of treachery*. 4. They will condemn Balbus *to death*.¹ 5. He acquitted the general² *of treachery*. 6. Cicero accused Verres *of excessive greed*. 7. Rutilius was impeached *for extortion*. 8. C. Flavius was condemned *for bribery*. 9. The Athenian people accused Timotheus and Iphicrates *of treason*. 10. Caesar impeached Dolabella *for extortion*. 11. Anaxagoras was accused *of impiety*. 12. Themistocles in his absence³ was condemned *of treachery*. 13. Orestes was accused *of matricide*, but⁴ Apollo acquitted him *of this crime*. 14. The senate neither⁵ acquitted nor convicted the king *of the crime*. 15. The leading-men of the adverse faction were condemned *to death*. 16. He was accused *of murder*, and was condemned *to death*. 17. Caelius the judge acquitted *of injury*⁶ him who had wronged⁷ the poet Lucilius. 18. Some⁸ were condemned (to pay) *a fine*, others (were condemned) *to death*. 19. Torquatus accused Publius Sulla *of complicity* in the conspiracy of Catiline.⁹ 20. Lysanias, who was condemned *for speculation*, lost¹⁰ his property and (his) senatorian name.¹¹

1. 'To condemn to death:' say, 'to condemn of the head.' 2. Dux. 3. Say, 'Themistocles absent.' 4. Autem, placed after Apollo. Autem is always put after the first word of the clause to which it belongs. 5. 'Neither . . . nor,' neque

. . . neque. 6. Plural. 7. Laedo. 8. 'Some . . . others,' alii . . . alii. 9. 'In the conspiracy of Catiline,' say, 'of the Catilinarian conspiracy.' 10. Perdo. 11. 'Senatorian name:' say, 'name of senator.'

XXXIII.—GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 45. An Objective Genitive is used after Adjectives and Participles which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify 'knowledge,' 'skill,' 'care,' 'desire,' or their contraries.

He was unskilled in manners.

Imperitus morum fuit.

Valour is greedy of danger.

Avida est periculi virtus.

We are all partakers of reason.

Omnes participes sumus rationis.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. The mind¹ of men is ignorant² of fate. 2. Cato was³ very patient of wrongs.⁴ 3. Flaminius was⁵ more greedy of victory than of peace. 4. Mummius was⁵ unskilled⁶ and ignorant⁷ of these things.⁸ 5. A mind¹ conscious of rectitude laughs-at the lies of rumour. 6. Tanaquil, the wife⁹ of Tarquinius, was⁵ skilled in auguries. 7. Flaccus was⁵ a most patriotic citizen.¹⁰ 8. The Romans have always been desirous of glory and¹¹ greedy of praise. 9. Reason makes man desirous of men. 10. You¹² have a leader mindful of you,¹³ forgetful of himself. 11. Catiline's body was capable-of-enduring hunger, want-of-rest, (and) cold. 12. Themistocles made the Athenians most skilful in naval warfare.¹⁴ 13. All hate (the man who is) unmindful of a favour. 14. Man is a partaker of reason and thought. 15. Beasts are destitute of reason and speech. 16. Many men are fonder of contention than of truth. 17. The nature of man is greedy of novelty. 18. Pyrrhus was⁵ skilful in war and fond of power. 19. Catiline was⁵ covetous of what-belonged-to-others,¹⁵ lavish of his-own.¹⁶ 20. Pythagoras calls¹⁷ (those who are) eager for wisdom, philosophers.

1. Mens. 2. Nescius. 3. Perfect. 4. Injuria. 5. Imperfect. 6. Rudis. 7. Ignarus. 8. Res. 9. Conjux. 10. Say, 'a citizen most loving (superl. of amans) of (his) country (respublica).'

11. Atque. 12. Plural. 13. Vestri: see Ex. XXIX., note 5. 14. Bellum. 15. Genitive singular neuter of alienus. 16. Suus, sing. 17. Appello with complementary accusative: see § 22.

XXXIV.—DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE.

§ 46. The Person or Thing for whose advantage or disadvantage something is done is in the Dative Case.

Numa chose virgins for Vesta.

Numa virgines Vestae legit.

Venus married (veiled herself for) Vulcan.

Venus nupsit Vulcano.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. We learn not *for the school* but *for life*. 2. The shepherd lays¹ snares *for the wolf*. 3. We wish² to be rich, not only³ *for ourselves* but also *for others*.⁴ 4. The virgin married⁵ *Metellus*, to whom Caecilia had been married. 5. I always find leisure *for*⁶ *philosophy*. 6. A beautiful house is built⁷ *for* (its) owners, not *for the mice*. 7. Solon made⁸ laws *for the Athenians*, Lycurgus *for the Spartans*. 8. The covetous⁹ (man) procures riches not *for himself* but *for others*.⁴ 9. I have leisure *for this business alone*.¹⁰ 10. Octavia, sister of Augustus Caesar, married *Antonius*. 11. The sister of Atticus had been married to *Q. Tullius Cicero*. 12. The death of Hiero changed everything¹¹ *for the Romans*. 13. *For you*¹² the Campanian land¹³ shall be ploughed; *for you* the city (of) Capua shall be made-populous. 14. We are born,¹⁴ not *for ourselves*, but *for the commonwealth*. 15. Sextus Roscius cultivated farms *for others*,⁴ not *for himself*. 16. Pisistratus conquered the Megarians *for himself*, not *for* (his) country. 17. The son of Blaesus was seeking¹⁵ discharge-from-service *for the soldiers*. 18. We wish² to be rich, not *for ourselves* alone,¹⁶ but¹⁷ *for* (our) children, relatives, friends, and especially¹⁸ *for* (our) country.¹⁹ 19. Anicia had married *Marcus Servius*, the brother of Publius Sulpicius. 20. Certain²⁰ (men) labour not *for virtue* but *for glory*.

1. *Paro*. 2. *Volo*. 3. See Ex. XXVI., note 7. 4. *Alius*. 5. *Nubere* means 'to take the veil,' and a bride is said *nubere viro*, 'to take the veil for her husband,' i.e. 'to marry him.' 6. *Vacare* means 'to be void' or 'empty'; hence, 'to be disengaged for,' i.e. 'to have leisure for.'

7. Present tense. 8. *Instituo*. 9. *Avarus*. 10. *Unus*. 11. Neuter plural. 12. Plural. 13. *Ager*. 14. Perfect tense. 15. *Peto*. 16. Say, 'not only for ourselves,' &c. 17. *Sed*. 18. 'And especially,' *maximeque*. 19. *Respublica*. 20. *Quidam*.

XXXV.—DATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS.

§ 47. The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with Transitive Verbs of 'giving,' 'telling,' and 'showing,' which take also an Accusative of the Direct Object.

The father has given me a book.
Pater librum mihi dedit.

I have often related to you my dream.
Saepe tibi meum somnium narravi.

I will show you the way.
Viam tibi monstrabo.

EXERCISE XXXV.

1. He surrendered the army to (his) *colleague*. 2. The safety of the soldiers was entrusted to (their) *leader*. 3. Honour was awarded¹ to *Miltiades*. 4. The lieutenants report to *Caesar*. 5. Fortune gives too-much to *many*, sufficient to *none*.² 6. Tell me the truth.³ 7. Nature gave us eyes. 8. I allow something⁴ to your anger;⁵ I concede⁶ (something) to (your) *youth*; I yield⁷ (something) to (our) *friendship*. 9. Darius delivers⁸ the command to *Pharnabazus* which he had formerly given to *Memnon*. 10. To the *beasts*, nature has given sense and motion. 11. Even to *pernicious things*⁹ the name of gods was assigned.¹ 12. Give the *little-boy* these two apples. 13. The emperor gave to the *citizens* ten sesterces apiece.¹⁰ 14. You have committed¹¹ the state¹² to a *vigilant*, not to a *timid*, to a *diligent*, not to an *inactive man*. 15. I gave counsel to *Fabius*. 16. He is a just (man) who gives¹ to every¹³ (man) his-own.¹⁴ 17. The same duties are not assigned¹ to *different ages*. 18. I ascribe¹ these (things), which have lately happened, not to the *fault* of the commander,¹⁵ but to *fortune*. 19. Two legions were given to *Sempronius*, which consisted¹⁶ each of four thousand¹⁷ foot and three hundred horse. 20. That brother of yours¹⁸ has told¹⁹ me all²⁰ that²¹ occurred.

1. Tribuo. 2. Singular of nullus. 3. Verum. 4. Neuter of aliquis. 5. Iracundia. 6. Do, dedi, datum, 1. 7. Cedo, cessi, cessum. 8. Trado. 9. Res. 10. 'Ten apiece,' deni, ae, a. 11. Plural. 12. Respublica. 13. Quisque. 14. Neuter singular of suus. 15. Imperator. 16.

'Consisted-of,' erant. 17. 'Four thousand each,' quaterna millia. 18. 'That brother of yours,' tuus iste frater. 19. Narro. 20. 'All (things),' neuter plural. 21. 'All that occurred,' say, 'all (the things) which happened' (perfect of fio).

XXXVI.—DATIVE OF THE OBJECT—*continued*.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

§ 48. The Dative of the Indirect Object is also used with Intransitive Verbs of 'pleasing,' 'helping,' 'sparing,' 'believing,' 'obeying,' and their opposites.

"A dative put, remember, pray,
After 'envy,' 'spare,' 'obey,'
'Persuade,' 'believe,' 'command': to these
Add 'pardon,' 'succour,' and 'displease';
Servire add and add *studere*,
'Heal,' 'favour,' 'hurt,' 'resist,' and *indulgere*."

[Obs. These words contain the idea of being 'pleasing to,' 'helpful to,' 'obedient to,' &c.]

Death spares nobody.

Mors nemini parcat.

Atticus pleased me.

Atticus mihi placuit.

I believed the consul Julius.

Julio consuli credidi.

He prevails-on Caesar.

Persuadet Caesari.

Pardon me.

Ignosce mihi.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. Fortune favours *the brave* (*plur.*) 2. *Our ancestors* did not like cunning.¹ 3. He trusts² nothing to *fortune*. 4. Parents are-indulgent³ even to *wicked*⁴ children. 5. He was anxious for⁵ a *revolution*. 6. Doctors cannot cure *all diseases*. 7. It is the duty of a Christian to envy *nobody*. 8. The wicked⁶ will not obey *the laws* of virtue. 9. You had-been-the-slave-of *anger*⁷ for many years.⁸ 10. The father always believes (his) *son*. 11. They⁹ cannot hurt *me*. 12. This thing¹⁰ pleases *me* very-much. 13. It is the duty of boys to obey (their) *masters*: it is the duty of masters to teach the boys. 14. Men trust² more¹¹ to the eyes than to the ears. 15. I am-angry-with *you*. 16. Do not spare¹² the suppliants. 17. The victor did not spare even¹³ the women¹⁴ and children. 18. Believe *me*, it is the duty of soldiers to obey (their) *general*.¹⁵ 19. The mind¹⁶ governs¹⁷ the body, as¹⁸ a king his citizens, or a parent (his) children. 20. My consulship does not please *Antonius*; but¹⁹ it pleased *Publius Servilius*, who died very recently.²⁰

1. Say, 'cunning did not please our ancestors.' 2. Credo. 3. 'Are indulgent-to:' say, 'indulge.' 4. Prævus. 5. Imperfect of studeo. 6. Improbis. 7. Ira. 8. Accusative of Duration of Time; see § 19. 9. Isti, æ, a. 10. Res. 11. Amplius. 12. See Ex. X., note 6. 13. 'Not

even,' ne ... quidem, with the emphatic words placed between them. 14. Muller. 15. Dux. 16. Animus. 17. Impero with dative. 18. Ut with indicative. 19. At. 20. Superlative adverb of nuper.

XXXVII.—DATIVE OF THE OBJECT—*continued*.3. COMPOUNDS OF *Sum*.

§ 49. The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with compounds of *Sum* (except *Possum*).

Balbus succours his friends.

Balbus adest amicis.

Caius commanded the cavalry.

Caius praeftit equitibus.

Marcus had taken-part-in many battles.

Marcus multis proeliis interfuerat.

EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Who commands *the army*? 2. The son survived (his) *father*. 3. He says that he has done-good-to *very many*.¹ 4. He says that he was not² engaged-in³ *the battle*. 5. The wars did not benefit⁴ *the state*. 6. Tarpeia's father commanded⁵ *the Roman citadel*. 7. Aruns, the son of Tarquin, commanded⁶ *the knights*.⁶ 8. Caius had been engaged-in⁷ *many battles*. 9. My slave has been engaged-in⁸ *the battle*. 10. A good man⁷ always benefits⁴ (his) *friends*. 11. Men do most good and injury to *men*.⁸ 12. As⁹ the laws (rule-over) *the magistrates*, so¹⁰ the magistrates rule-over¹¹ *the people*.¹² 13. (My) husband is always absent-from *me*. 14. Pelopidas was present-in¹³ *all dangers*. 15. Some¹⁴ want judgment, others¹⁵ courage,¹⁶ others opportunity. 16. Indolence is hurtful-to¹⁷ *all* (men). 17. Caesar survived¹⁸ *many battles*. 18. The soul survives *the body*. 19. He not-only¹⁹ took-part, but even took-the-lead, in *these affairs*.²⁰ 20. He promises never to fail²¹ *his friends*.

1. Permulti, ae, a. 2. Use the verb of denial, nego; see § 30. 3. Intersum. 4. Prosum. 5. Imperfect. 6. Equites. 7. Vir. 8. Say, 'mer benefit and injure men most-of-all.' 9. Ut with indicative. 10. Ita. 11. Praesum. 12. Singular of populus. 13. Perfect of adsum. 14.

'To some . . . to others,' aliis . . . aliis. 15. Say, 'judgment (consilium) is-wanting to some,' &c. 16. Animus. 17. Obsum. 18. Perfect. 19. 'Not only . . . but even,' non solum . . . sed etiam. Use perfect of both verbs. 20. Res. 21. Acc. with inf. future; see § 29.

XXXVIII.—DATIVE OF THE OBJECT—*continued.*

4. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 50. The Dative of the Remoter Object is used after the following adjectives and their opposites :—

‘Agreeable, friendly, faithful, dear,
Easy, useful, like *and* near.’

The son is like (his) father.

Filius patri similis est.

The peace was useful to the state.

Pax reipublicae utilis erat.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Deiotarus was¹ faithful *to the Roman people.*² 2. All (things) become more like a camp than a city. 3. Aristides was³ a contemporary of Themistocles. 4. Death is common *to every*⁴ age. 5. The tribunes of the plebs⁵ are friendly *to us.* 6. This thing⁶ is easy *for you,* difficult *for others.*⁶ 7. This thing⁵ was¹ most agreeable *to me* and *all mine.* 8. He was³ dear *to the whole country.*⁷ 9. Let him be⁸ serviceable⁹ *to (his) country,* useful *to the lands.* 10. Nothing is so like death as sleep. 11. Cruelty is especially hostile¹⁰ *to the nature of man.*¹¹ 12. The soil of (our) country is dear *to all.* 13. This (thing) is unlike *that.*¹² 14. Tullus Hostilius was³ unlike *the last*¹³ king. 15. This speech was³ not disagreeable *to the Gauls.* 16. Romulus was³ popular-with¹⁴ *the multitude.* 17. This place is near¹⁵ *the city.* 18. The gods will be propitious *to me.* 19. A dog is very like a wolf. 20. The horse and the dog are most faithful¹⁶ *to man.*²

1. Imperfect. 2. Singular. 3. Perfect.
4. ‘Every,’ omnis (*sing.*). 5. Res. 6.
Ceteri, ae, a. 7. ‘To the whole country :’
say, ‘to all the citizens.’ 8. Present
Subjunctive; see Ex. XXX., note 12.

9. Idoneus. 10. Inimicus, a, um. 11.
Plural. 12. Ille. 13. ‘Last :’ say, ‘near-
est,’ and use superlative of prope. 14.
‘Popular-with :’ say, ‘agreeable-to.’ 15.
Propinquus. 16. Masc. plur.

XXXIX.—PREDICATIVE DATIVE OF PURPOSE.

(DOUBLE DATIVE.)

§ 51. A Dative of the Purpose or Result of an action is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added.

They came to the assistance of Caesar.
Caesari auxilio venerunt.

He was a reproach to all his associates.
Omnibus sociis suis opprobrio fuit.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. The greedy sea is *fatal*¹ to sailors. 2. Caesar left two legions to guard the camp.² 3. Fabia was³ a laughing-stock to (her) sister. 4. It does me honour⁴ and is useful to me. 5. That⁵ machine was⁶ of great service to the Romans. 6. No state helped the Athenians⁶ except Plataea.⁷ 7. Pericles gave his estates⁸ as a present to the state.⁹ 8. Severity is usually¹⁰ hateful¹¹ to many. 9. This¹² also was³ an advantage¹³ to others.¹⁴ 10. It is disgraceful to turn politics¹⁵ to profit. 11. Thy voice and defence were¹⁶ of assistance to very-many.¹⁷ 12. A spacious house often turns¹⁸ to the disgrace¹⁹ of (its) owner. 13. Caesar promises to come²⁰ to the assistance of the Helvetii. 14. They sent the cavalry²¹ to the assistance of Caesar. 15. He thinks²² that a rural life is²⁰ a disgrace²³ and a crime. 16. Too-much²⁴ confidence is-wont to be a calamity. 17. The state of your health²⁵ causes us great anxiety.²⁶ 18. Who will not impute that⁵ to you as a fault? 19. That circumstance²⁷ was³ a calamity also²⁸ to Claudia, the consul's sister. 20. Pausanias king of the Lacedaemonians came to the assistance of the Athenians.

1. 'Is fatal:' say, 'is for a destruction.' 2. 'To guard the camp:' say, 'for a guard to the camp.' 3. Perfect. 4. Say, 'It is to me both (et) for an honour and (et) an advantage (utilitas).' 5. Is, ea, id. 6. 'Helped the Athenians:' say, 'was (fuit) for an assistance to the Athenians.' 7. 'Except Plataea:' say, 'except (praeter with acc.) the Plataeans.' 8. 'Estates,' plural of ager. 9. Respublica. 10. 'Is usually:' say, 'is-accustomed to be,' esse solet. 11. 'Hateful:' say, 'for a hatred.' 12. Neuter. 13. 'An advan-

tage:' say, 'for a good' (neut. sing. of bonus). 14. Alius. 15. 'To turn politics to profit:' say, 'to have the state for gain,' habere quaestui rempublicam. 16. Use perfect singular. 17. Plurimus. 18. Flo. 19. Dedecus. 20. Acc. with inf. 21. Equitatus. 22. Puto. 23. Probrum. 24. Nimis, a, um. 25. 'The state of your health:' say, 'thy state-of-health,' valetudo tua. 26. 'Causes us great anxiety:' say, 'is for the greatest care to us.' 27. Ea res. 28. Etiam.

XL.—ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT AND PERSONAL AGENT.

§ 52. The Ablative of the Instrument answers the question '*By what means?*'

The Ablative of the Personal Agent with the Preposition *ab*, 'by,' answers the question '*By whom?*'

Clitus was slain by Alexander with a spear.

Clitus ab Alexandro hastā interfectus est.

EXERCISE XL.

1. He slew¹ (his) enemy *with a sword*.² 2. Caesar was informed³ *by*⁴ scouts. 3. He wounded himself *with his* (own) sword.³ 4. Caesar

was pierced *with twenty-three wounds*. 5. Caesar was slain⁶ *by Brutus*. 6. The boys are taught *by (their) masters*. 7. I amuse myself *with books*. 8. The pine is tossed *by the winds*. 9. He laid-waste the land⁸ *with fire and⁷ sword*. 10. The sun illumines all⁹ (things) *with its light*. 11. The city has been fortified *with walls*. 12. Faithful slaves are praised *by (their) masters*.⁹ 13. The camp has been fortified *by the soldiers with a rampart and¹⁰ ditch*. 14. Bulls *with (their) horns*, wild-boars *with (their) tusks*, lions *by biting*, defend¹¹ themselves. 15. Carthage was destroyed *by Scipio and Corinth by L. Mummius*. 16. The thief defends¹² himself *with a weapon*. 17. The earth is clothed¹³ *with flowers, herbs, trees, (and) fruits*. 18. An iron ring is worn-away¹⁴ *by constant use*. 19. Demosthenes overcame¹⁵ the impediments of nature *by diligence and¹⁰ industry*. 20. Alexandria, a wealthy city of Egypt, was founded *by Alexander the Great*.

1. Interficio. 2. Gladius. 3. 'Was informed,' certior factus est. Certior (comparative of certus, a, um) is Complementary Nominative after fio; see § 18. 4. Use a before consonants, and ab before vowels and h. 5. Occido. 6. Ager. 7.

'With fire and sword,' igni ferroque. 8. Cunctus, a, um. 9. Dominus, 'a master (who owns),' 10. Que appended to the second noun. 11. Tutor, atus sum. 12. Defendo. 13. Perfect passive. 14. Present passive. 15. Perfect of supero.

XLI.—ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

§ 53. The following prepositions govern an Ablative:—

"Absque, a, ab, abs and de,
Coram, clam, cum, ex and e,
Tenus, sine, pro and prae;
To these let super, subter be appended,
With in and sub, if 'rest in' be intended."

EXERCISE XLI.

1. I wish¹ to live *with you*.² 2. The army started³ *from⁴ the camp*. 3. I came *with my brother*. 4. Cicero wrote a book *on⁵ Friendship*. 5. Caesar waged war *in⁶ Gaul*. 6. The apples lie⁷ *under⁸ the tree*. 7. I carry all my⁹ (property) *with me*. 8. I can neither¹⁰ live *with you* nor *without you*. 9. Friendship cannot exist¹¹ *without virtue*. 10. Pompey came into¹² Macedonia *with an army*. 11. He carried-on¹³ a war *with¹⁴ the Latins*. 12. The man of¹⁵ whom I spoke¹⁶ was¹⁷ at Athens. 13. Catiline hastens to set-out *from¹⁸ the city*. 14. No animal that¹⁹ has blood can live¹¹ *without a heart*. 15. The good and²⁰ wise are being-banished²¹ *from⁴ the state*. 16. Brave men²² do not feel (their) wounds *in the midst-of-battle*. 17. Antony shed tears *in-sight-of the Roman*

people. 18. The lieutenant-general led-out²³ the army *from*⁴ *winter-quarters.* 19. Antiochus was commanded²⁴ to reign *as-far-as*²⁵ *Taurus.* 20. Sweet²⁶ and comely²⁶ it is to die *for* (one's) *native-land.*

1. Volo. 2. When 'with' in English means 'in company with,' it must be translated by *cum*; but where 'with' denotes the instrument, as in Ex. XL., *cum* cannot be used, but only the Instrumental Ablative. *Cum* is appended to the personal pronouns thus: *tecum, nobiscum, vobiscum, &c.* 3. Proficiscor. 4. When 'from' means 'away from,' it must be translated by *a* before a consonant or *ab* before a vowel or *h*, as in sentence 13, *ab urbe*; but if it means 'out of,' as in sentences 2, 15 and 18, it should be rendered by *e* or *ex*, *e castris, ex civitate, ex hibernis.* 5. 'On,' 'concerning,' *de.* 6. *In* with ablative denotes *place where*; when expressing direction, it is followed by the accusative; see § 27. 7. 'To lie (on the ground),' *jaceo*; 'to

lie,' 'to tell a lie,' *mentior.* 8. 'Under' after a verb like 'lie,' denoting 'rest in a place,' is *sub* with ablative, but after a verb of motion is *sub* with accusative, as, *mittere sub jugum*, 'to send under the yoke;' see Ex. XII. 9. 'All my (property),' *omnia mea.* 10. 'Neither... nor,' *nec... nec.* 11. *Esse.* 12. *In* with acc.; see note 6. 13. *Gero.* 14. *Cum.* 15. 'Of,' 'concerning,' *de.* 16. *Loquor.* 17. Perfect. 18. *Ab*; see note 4. 19. 'That' meaning 'which' is a relative pronoun, *qui, quae, quod.* 20. *Que* appended to the second noun. 21. Present passive. 22. *Vir.* 23. *Educo, xi, ctum.* 24. Perf. pass. of *jubeo.* 25. *Tenus* is placed after the noun it governs. 26. Neuter, the word 'thing' being understood.

XLII.—ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 54. The Ablative of Time answers the questions *When? Within what time?*

He rises at daybreak.
Primā luce surgit.

He died within a few days.
Paucis diebus mortuus est.

EXERCISE XLII.

1. In winter—in spring—in summer—in autumn—at the fourth hour—at the third watch—in the seventh year—within six days—on the next day¹—on the same day—in the three-hundredth year. 2. *In the third year* he concluded the war. 3. *On the fifth day* he set-out for Rome. 4. Swallows go-away *in the winter*² months, and return *in the spring.* 5. *On the following day* he divided the cavalry into three parts. 6. We see that birds migrate into other³ lands⁴ *in autumn.* 7. Caesar sent succours to the townsmen *in the middle* (of the) *night.*⁵ 8. The planet Saturn⁶ completes⁷ its course *in about thirty years.* 9. *On Caesar's arrival* the Pompeians returned⁸ into (their) camp. 10. It is well known⁹ that the Romans *in the same year* destroyed¹⁰ two most flourishing cities, Carthage and Corinth. 11. Mithridates slaughtered many thousands

of Roman citizens *in one day*. 12. Plato died (while) writing,¹¹ *in his eighty-first year*.¹² 13. *In winter* all wars rest. 14. We came home on the night *of the seventh day*,¹³ and remained¹⁴ there¹⁵ twenty-two days. 15. I¹⁶ came to Capua *on that very*¹⁷ day. 16. Pythagoras lived¹⁸ in¹⁹ Italy *in the same times in which* Brutus freed (his) native-country. 17. Agamemnon with-difficulty took one city *in ten years*. 18. *In the third year* the city was taken. 19. Flaminius reached²⁰ the Trasimene Lake *at sunset*. 20. Caesar was killed²¹ *in the year* B.C. 44.²²

1. Masculine. 2. Adj. hibernus, a, um. 3. Alius. 4. Terra. 5. 'The middle (of the) night,' media nox. 6. 'The planet Saturn:' say, 'the star of Saturn.' 7. Conficio. 8. Revertor, sus, sum, 3 dep. 9. Constat with acc. and inf. 10. Deleo. 11. Present Participle in agreement with Plato. 12. 'In his eighty-first year:' say, 'in the one and eightieth year.' 13. 'On the night of the seventh day:' say, 'on

the seventh day, at night' (noctu). 14. Moror. 15. 'And there:' say, 'where,' ubi. 16. Use ego. 17. 'That very,' is ipse. 18. 'Lived:' say, 'was' (perf.). 19. In with abl. 20. 'Reached:' say, 'arrived at,' pervenit ad. 21. Interficio. 22. 'In the year B.C. 44:' say, 'in the forty-fourth year before Christ born,' ante Christum natum.

XLIII.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 55. The Ablative Absolute is a phrase consisting of a Noun in the Ablative Case, and a Participle, Noun, or Adjective in agreement with it: it is called Absolute because in construction it is independent of the rest of the Sentence.

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin except in the case of Deponent Verbs. We say:

Having exhorted the soldiers, he went-away.
Hortatus milites, abiit.

But we cannot thus translate:

Having conquered the enemy, he went-away,

because there is no Deponent Verb that means 'to conquer.' To supply this want, the Latins used the Passive Participle in agreement with what was its own Object (in this case 'enemy'), both being put in the Ablative. Thus:

- (1.) The Ablative of hostes is hostibus.
- (2.) The Passive Participle of vinco, vici, victum is victus, a, um (declined like bonus, a, um).
- (3.) Hostibus is Ablative Plural Masculine.

- (4.) The Ablative Plural Masculine of *victus*, a, um, is *victis*. Hence, combining Noun and Participle, we have

Hostibus victis, abiit.

This may be variously expressed in English :

- (a.) Having conquered the enemy, he went-away.
- (b.) The enemy having been conquered, he went-away.
- (c.) When he had conquered the enemy, he went-away.
- (d.) After conquering the enemy, he went-away.

Similarly :

Having written the letter, *scriptā epistolā*.

The citizens having been slain, *civibus interfectis*.

After the banishment of Tarquin, *Tarquinio expulso*.

On the death of Cato, *Catone mortuo*.

EXERCISE XLIII.

1. (a) The war having been finished—(b) having received a wound—(c) having raised a shout—(d) many¹ having been slain²—(e) Troy having been conquered—(f) when the moon had risen³—(g) having conquered the Gauls—(h) having heard these things⁴—(i) having left the camp—(j) when Caesar had been slain. 2. *Kings having been driven-out*, consuls were elected.⁵ 3. *Caesar, having landed* (his) army, hastens against⁶ the enemy. 4. *Having learnt⁷ these things*, Caesar sent ambassadors. 5. *Ariovistus, having heard-of⁷ Caesar's arrival*, sent ambassadors to⁶ him. 6. Alexander, *having conquered Darius*, returned.⁸ 7. *On the death of Tullus*,⁹ the people elected Ancus Martius king.¹⁰ 8. *After a year had intervened*,¹¹ all hope of peace being removed,¹² Fabricius was sent against¹³ Pyrrhus. 9. *War having arisen*,¹⁴ Caesar set-out for Rome. 10. *The name being changed*, the story is told¹⁵ of¹⁶ you. 11. *Having taken the city*, Caesar departed from¹⁷ Gaul. 12. *When he had fortified the camp*, Caesar left two legions there. 13. (If) *good-will is removed*,¹⁸ the name of friendship is done-away.¹⁸ 14. Caelius writes that¹⁹ Flaminius fell²⁰ at²¹ Trasimenus through neglect of religion.²² 15. *Scipio having been elected consul*, the Roman army crossed²³ into Africa. 16. *When these matters⁴ had been settled*, Caesar set-out for Rome. 17. He left without having received the letter.²⁴ 18. (And) *when²⁵ this circumstance had been announced*, Caesar sent-forward the cavalry. 19. *When the sun had set*, Caius returned⁸ home.

20. Horatius, when he had slain²⁶ the three Curiatii, and lost²⁷ his two brothers, returned²⁸ home victorious.²⁹

1. Complures, ium, 3 pl. 2. Interficio. 3. Say, 'the moon having risen,' and use the perf. part. of orior. 4. Res. 5. Perfect. 6. Ad with acc. 7. Cognosco. 8. Redeo. 9. Say, 'Tullius having died.' 10. Complementary Accusative after creo. 11. Say, 'a year having intervened.' 12. Aufero. 13. Contra with acc. 14. Orior. 15. Narro, avi, atum. 16. 'Of,' 'concerning,' de with abl. 17. Ex with abl. 18. Say, 'goodwill having been taken

away, the name of friendship is taken-away' (pres. pass.). 19. Acc. with inf. 20. Cedo. 21. Apud with acc. 22. Say, 'religion having been neglected.' 23. Trajicio. 24. Say, 'not having received the letter' (litterae). 25. Say, 'which thing (res) having been announced.' 26. Occido. 27. Amitto. 28. 'Returned:' say, 'betook himself.' 29. Say, 'conqueror' (victor) in apposition with 'Horatius.'

XLIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE—continued.

§ 56. The Ablative Absolute is also used with Present Participles Active.

When the sun sets, *Sole occidente*.

At the beginning of spring, *Ineunte vere*.

Christ was born when Augustus was Emperor.

Imperante Augusto, natus est Christus.

Obs. The English Participle must be translated by the Latin Perfect Participle when the action expressed by it must be over before that expressed by the Verb begins, as in Exercise XLIII.

But when the two actions are simultaneous, i.e. going on together, as in the above examples, the Present Participle must be used.

The Verb *Sum* has no Present Participle, but the sense of one may be implied in—

(a.) A Verbal Substantive; as, *dux*, &c.

(b.) The titles of office; as, *rex*, *consul*, &c.

(c.) An Adjective alone; as, *vivus*, *ignarus*, &c.

You (being) leader, *or*, With you (as) leader, *or* Under your leadership, *Te duce*.

You (being) consul, *or*, In your consulship, *Te consule*.

Brutus (being) alive, *or*, while Brutus is living, *Bruto vivo*.

In the consulship of L. Aemilius Paullus (and) C. Licinius.
L. Aemilio Paulo, C. Licinio consulibus.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. (a) While Tullus was king¹—(b) while (my) father was alive—(c) when Camillus was commander²—(d) during the lifetime

of Hannibal³—(e) in the consulship of Caninius⁴—(f) in my consulship⁵—(g) in your absence—(h) under the guidance of the king⁶—(i) when the sun rises—(j) during the reign of Ancus.⁷ 2. Pythagoras came into Italy *in the reign of*⁷ *Tarquinius Superbus*. 3. Augustus was born *when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls*. 4. The Carthaginians, *under the command of Hannibal*, defeated⁸ the Romans. 5. These (things) were done⁹ *in the consulship of Cicero*. 6. The conspiracy of Catiline broke-out *in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius*. 7. This was done¹⁰ *without my knowledge*.¹¹ 8. Darius prepared¹² a fleet *in consequence of the solicitations of (his) friends*.¹³ 9. *When the signal had been given*,¹⁴ the Roman youth,¹⁵ *under the command of Manlius*, climbed into the citadel. 10. *In your absence* we did not dare to fight. 11. *When the sun rises*, darkness flies-away.¹⁶ 12. Horace was born *in the consulship of Torquatus*. 13. The Roman legions set-out against¹⁷ the Gauls *under the leadership of Camillus*.² 14. *Under my leadership* you will be safe. 15. They did¹⁰ this *in his absence*.¹⁸ 16. He entered the city *without the guards perceiving (it)*.¹⁹ 17. Solon and Pisistratus flourished²⁰ *in the reign of Servius Tullius*. 18. This was done¹⁰ *while the king was alive*. 19. He took the city *with my assistance*.²¹ 20. All animals²² *under the guidance of nature itself*²³ defend²⁴ their-own interests.

1. Say, 'Tullius (being) king.' 2. Say, 'Camillus (being) leader (dux).' 3. Say, 'Hannibal (being) alive.' 4. Say, 'Caninius (being) consul.' 5. Say, 'I (being) consul.' 6. Say, 'The king (being) leader (dux).' 7. Use pres. part. of regno. 8. Vinco. 9. Gero. 10. Facio. 11. Say, 'I (being) ignorant (ignarus).'

horting.' 14. The perf. part. must be used here. 15. Juventus. 16. Fugio. 17. Adversus with acc. 18. Say, 'he (is) (being) absent.' 19. Say, 'the guards not perceiving.' 20. Perfect. 21. Say, 'I assisting.' 22. Animans. 23. Say, 'nature herself (ipsa) guiding (duco).' 24. Defendo.

XLV.—ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

§ 57. After Adjectives in the Comparative Degree, *quam*, 'than,' may be omitted, and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative.

Silver is of-less-value than gold.
Vilius argentum est auro.

What is sweeter than honey?
Quid dulcius est melle?

Who does not-know that the sun is greater than the moon?
Quis nescit solem lunā majorem esse?

EXERCISE XLV.

1. Britain is less *than Gaul*. 2. Caesar was ¹ greater *than Scipio*. 3. Gold is heavier *than silver*. 4. Nothing is better ² *than reason*. 5. I think death lighter ³ *than disgrace*.⁴ 6. We know that the moon is ⁵ less *than the sun*. 7. What ⁶ can be greater *than the sun*? 8. Tullus Hostilius was ¹ more warlike ⁷ *than Romulus*. 9. Nothing is more godlike ² *than clemency*. 10. The daughter is more beautiful *than (her) beautiful mother*. 11. Nothing is worse ² *than the pretence of love*. 12. The boy was ¹ wiser *than (his) sister*. 13. The sons are more fortunate *than (their) parents*. 14. In summer the days are longer *than the nights*. 15. In winter the days are shorter *than the nights*. 16. I have not seen a longer spear *than this*.⁸ 17. Caesar used-to-say ⁹ that the Germans were ⁵ more warlike ¹⁰ *than the Gauls*. 18. Your ¹¹ plans ¹² are clearer to us *than the light*. 19. What ⁶ is more vile *than avarice*, what more despicable *than cowardice*?¹³ 20. Nothing is more beautiful,² nothing more amiable ² *than virtue*, nothing sweeter ² *than friendship*.

1. Perfect. 2. Neuter singular to agree with nihil. 3. *Levis*, e, Complementary Accusative after *puto*; see Ex. XI. 4. *Dedecus*. 5. Acc. with *inf.* 6. Neuter of *quis* interrogative. 7. *Ferox*. 8. Use

ego and translate, 'I have not seen a longer (spear) than this spear.' 9. The imperfect is used to denote repeated or habitual action. 10. *Bellicosus*. 11. *Tuus*. 12. *Consilium*. 13. *Timiditas*.

XLVI.—ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 58. The Ablative of Price answers the questions 'For how much?' 'At what cost?'

This (man) sold his country for gold.
Vendidit hic auro patriam.

EXERCISE XLVI.

1. The fish was bought *for a denarius*. 2. Isocrates sold a single ¹ speech *for twenty talents*. 3. Polybius writes that ² this affair ³ cost the Achaeans ⁴ *one hundred talents*. 4. Gorgias taught *for one hundred minae* (each pupil). 5. This book is to-be-sold ⁵ *for ten denarii*. 6. Aristotle bought certain ⁶ books *for three talents*.⁷ 7. King Attalus bought a picture ⁸ *for a hundred talents*. 8. The painter Asclepiodorus sold twelve pictures ⁸ *for three hundred minae* (each). 9. He bought a garden *for three talents*. 10. Each bushel of wheat ⁹ cost ¹⁰ *three sesterces*. 11. The victory cost ¹¹ the Romans *much blood*. 12. That ¹² victory cost ¹³ us *much blood* and ¹⁴ (manv) *wounds*. 13. Apollonius taught the art-of-oratory *for a*

fee. 14. Virtue cannot be bought¹⁵ *for gold.* 15. Gorgias was the first¹⁶ to teach at Athens *for gold.* 16. A certain⁶ woman¹⁷ sold the life of her husband¹⁸ *for gold.* 17. What¹⁹ is not wanted²⁰ is dear *at a penny.* 18. Piso sold himself to King Cottus *for three hundred talents.* 19. I²¹ do not buy hope *at a price.* 20. I have bought the statues and pictures²² *at a low²³ rate.*²⁴

1. Unus. 2. Acc. with infin. 3. Ea res. 4. 'Cost the Achaeans,' &c.: say, 'stood (perf.) to the Achaeans (dat.) at one hundred talents.' 5. 'To be sold,' venalis, e. 6. Quidam. 7. Not for three talents each, or we should require ternis. 8. Tabella. 9. Triticum. 10. 'Cost,' imperf. of sum; say, 'the bushel of wheat was at three sesterces (each).' 11. 'Cost the Romans,' &c.: say, 'stood to the Romans (dat.) at much blood.' 12.

Is, ea, id. 13. 'Cost us,' &c.: say, 'stood to us,' &c. 14. Ac. 15. 'Cannot be bought,' non venalis est. 16. 'Was the first to teach:' say, 'first (adjective in agreement with Gorgias) taught,' primus docuit. 17. Mullier. 18. Vir. 19. Neuter of qui, quae, quod. 20. Opus, neut. indeclinable. 21. Use pronoun. 22. Pictura. 23. Parvus, a, um. 24. Pretium.

XLVII.—ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

§ 59. The Ablative of Quality answers the question '*Of what description?*' and always has an Adjective in agreement with it.

Agesilaus was of low stature and of a small body.
Agesilaus staturā fuit humili et corpore exiguo.

Dumnorix was (a man) of the greatest boldness.
Dumnorix erat summā audaciā.

EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Hector was¹ a hero *of distinguished valour.*² 2. Cato lost³ a son *of the greatest⁴ genius* and *of the greatest⁴ virtue.* 3. Caius was⁵ (a man) *of great⁶ personal beauty.*⁷ 4. An old-man *with long⁸ beard* (and) *with rough hair* is lying on-the-ground.⁹ 5. There-lay¹⁰ between Labienus and¹¹ the enemy¹² a river *of difficult passage* and¹³ *with precipitous banks.* 6. P. Murena was⁵ (a man) *of moderate ability.* 7. He had⁵ a brother Dumnorix *of supreme⁴ audacity.* 8. At Rome I saw Balbus, a man¹⁴ *of eminent prudence.* 9. Iphicrates possessed¹⁵ both¹⁶ *a great mind¹⁷* and *body,* and¹⁸ *a princely form.* 10. Herodotus possesses¹⁹ *great eloquence.* 11. Cicero, an orator *of the highest⁴ genius,* was put to death. 12. (His) weapon was¹ a lance *of shining steel.* 13. It behoves us to be *of good courage.*¹⁷ 14. Caesar is said²⁰ to have been *of tall stature* (and) *fair complexion.* 15. Cato possessed¹⁵ *remarkable foresight* and *industry* in all things.²¹ 16. Catiline possessed¹⁵ *great power*²² both¹⁶ of mind¹⁷ and body, but *a bad* and¹⁸

*depraved disposition.*²³ 17. Without this hope no-one can be *of a tranquil mind.*¹⁷ 18. Cassius was⁵ (a man) *of remarkable uprightness, virtue, and firmness.* 19. Balbus, a man¹⁴ *of the utmost⁴ wisdom,* has been extolled by²⁴ many writers. 20. Iccius, (a man) *of the highest⁴ rank and influence* among²⁵ his (countrymen), sent messengers to²⁶ Caesar.

1. Imperfect. 2. Virtus. 3. Amitto. 4. Summus, a, um. 5. Perfect. 6. Eximius, a, um. 7. 'Of great personal beauty:' say, 'of great beauty (abl.) of body (gen.).' 8. Promissus, a, um. 9. See § 33. 10. 'There-lay:' say, 'there-was,' erat. 11. Atque. 12. Singular. 13. Que appended to riplis. 14. Vir. 15. 'Possessed:' say, 'was (fuit) of,' with abl.

of quality. 16. 'Both ... and,' et...et. 17. Animus. 18. Que appended to the adjective. 19. 'Possesses:' say, 'is of,' with abl. of quality. 20. Trado. 21. Res. 22. Vis. 23. Ingenium. 24. Remember that the ablative of the personal agent takes the preposition a or ab: see § 52. 25. Inter with acc. 26. 'To' after a verb of motion is ad with acc.

XLVIII.—VERBS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

§ 60. The Deponent Verbs *utor, fungor, potior, vescor, fruor* take an Ablative!

"With 'use,' 'discharge,' 'possession-get,' 'to feed-on,' and 'enjoy,'

An Ablative correctly stands; remember this, my boy."

The wise (man) uses reason in-the-best-way.

Sapiens ratione optime utitur.

A wise (man) always discharges (his) duty.

Sapiens semper fungitur officio.

The enemy took-possession-of the city.

Hostes urbe potiti sunt.

I live-on milk, cheese, and flesh.

Lacte, caseo, carne vescor.

We all enjoy many pleasures.

Multis voluptatibus omnes fruimur.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. I always enjoy *spring.* 2. I enjoy *delightful ease.* 3. We¹ enjoy *the plains,* we¹ enjoy *the mountains.* 4. Our soldiers gained² *the victory.* 5. The life *which* we enjoy is very short. 6. Employ³ me either⁴ (as) *general⁵* or (as) *soldier.* 7. The wise (man) enjoys *what-is-present.*⁶ 8. Concerning these matters⁷ use⁸ *your-own judgment.* 9. All are rich who can enjoy *the sky* and *the earth.* 10. (He) who does not follow⁹ *good counsels* cannot be happy.¹⁰ 11. The most ancient inhabitants of Greece subsisted-on¹¹ *acorns.* 12. The Numidians used-to-feed-upon *the flesh of-wild-beasts.*¹² 13. Agesilaus obtained-possession-of¹³ *great spoil.* 14. Hannibal

obtained-possession-of¹⁵ *Tarentum* by¹⁴ treachery. 15. It is (the duty) of a good citizen to discharge *all the duties* of life. 16. Hannibal chose-rather¹³ to enjoy than to use *victory*. 17. Caesar's army enjoyed¹⁵ *the best* (of) *health* and *the greatest abundance*¹⁶ of water. 18. You know (how) to conquer, Hannibal, but you know-not (how) to use *victory*. 19. We enjoy and make-use-of *very-many maritime productions*.¹⁷ 20. Alexander made-himself-master-of¹⁸ *the kingdom* of the Persians.

1. Use pronoun. 2. Potior. 3. 'Employ: 'say, 'use' (plur. imperative). 4. 'Either... or,' vel... vel. 5. Imperator. 6. 'What-is-present: 'say, 'present (things), neut. plur. of praesens, ntis. 7. Res. 8. Singular. 9. Utor. 10. Felix. 11. Imperfect of vescor. 12. 'Of-wild-beasts,' ferinus, a, um. 13. Perfect. 14.

'By: 'say, 'through,' per with acc. 15. Imperfect of utor. 16. 'The greatest abundance,' summa copia. 'And,' que appended to summa. 17. Say, 'we enjoy and (atque) use very-many (plurimus) maritime things (res).' 18. 'Made himself master of: 'say, 'obtained-possession-of,' and use perfect indicative of potior.

XLIX.—DIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 61. A Direct Question is one which is given in the words of the speaker, *e.g.*

"What has he done?"

§ 62. A Direct Question is expressed in Latin by the Indicative Mood; as,

"*Quid fecit?*"

Direct Questions are Single or Alternative.

(a.) Single Questions may be asked:

(1.) By an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb; as,

Who killed Clodius?
Quis Clodium interfecit?
When will he come?
Quando veniet?

(2.) By *nonne*, expecting the answer 'Yes'; as,

Is not a dog like a wolf? [Yes.]
Canis nonne similis lupo est?

(3.) By *num*, expecting the answer 'No'; as,

Dare you deny this? [No.]
Num hoc negare audes?

- (4.) By *-ne* at the end of a word, expecting either answer ; as,

Can you say ? [I wish to know.]
Potesne dicere ?

- (b.) Alternative Questions are generally asked by *utrum* ... *an* (or), *e.g.*

Is that your fault or ours ?=
 Whether is that your fault or ours ?
Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est ?

EXERCISE XLIX.

1. Who¹ is (he), and whence has he come ? 2. Is it not more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived ? 3. Is it² more disgraceful to be deceived than to deceive ? [No.] 4. Has any-one³ dared to deny these (things) ? [No.] 5. Did you ever see⁴ a white⁵ hare ? 6. Was he killed⁶ with a sword ? 7. Did he set out for Rome ? 8. Did he give you the book ? 9. Did he give you the book ? 10. Have you⁷ two countries,⁸ or is this⁹ (your) common country ? 11. Whither now are you leading me ? 12. Can we surpass Plato in eloquence ? [No.] 13. Whether is iron or gold more useful ? 14. What-sort-of¹⁰ (a man) is Milo ? Is he wise or foolish ?¹¹ 15. Are-not these (things) clearer than the light ? 16. Can¹² he do this or-not ?¹³ 17. Is not my field smaller than¹⁴ yours ? 18. By what steps did Romulus mount-up into heaven ? By (his) exploits and¹⁵ virtues. 19. What is better or¹⁶ what more excellent¹⁷ than goodness and beneficence ? 20. Has he dared¹⁸ to deny this or-not ?

1. Quis, 'who?' When a question has no interrogative pronoun (quis, quid, &c.) or adverb of place, time, &c. (quo ? quando ? &c.), one of the particles nonne, num, ne, should be put in, but not otherwise. 2. Num is placed at the beginning of the sentence. 3. 'Any-one,' quis. 4. *-ne* is appended to the word about which information is sought, or upon which emphasis is laid in asking the question. The emphatic word in each of the sentences 5-9 is printed in italics.

5. Candidus. 6. Interficio. 7. Plural. 8. Patria. Here the answer 'No' is expected, because it is impossible for any one to have two native-lands. 9. Ille, a, ud. 10. Qualis. 11. Say, 'whether (utrum) is he wise or (an) foolish ?' 12. Say, 'whether (utrum) can he,' &c. 13. 'Or-not' in direct questions is annon. 14. Quam. 15. Atque. 16. Aut. 17. Praestans, ntis. 18. Say, 'whether (utrum) has he,' &c.

L.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 63. An Indirect Question is one which is not directly put, but depends on some previous Verb by means of an Interrogative Pronoun, Adverb or particle, *e.g.*

What are you doing? (Direct Question.)

I know what you are doing. (Indirect Question.)

§ 64. An Indirect Question is expressed in Latin by the Subjunctive Mood.

Quid agis? (Direct.)

Scio quid agas. (Indirect.)

§ 65. The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the Verb in the former part of the sentence.

§ 66. The general Rule for the Sequence of Tenses is that

Primary Tenses follow Primary.
Historic Tenses follow Historic.

Obs. 1. The Primary Tenses are the Present, Future, and Perfect with 'have.'*

The Historic Tenses are the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Perfect without 'have.'

Obs. 2. There is no Future Subjunctive, its place being filled by the Present Subjunctive, or by the Future Participle with *sim* after the Primary Tenses and *essem* after the Historic.

I ask, shall ask, have asked—what he is writing, will write, has written.

Quaero, quaeram, quaesivi—quid scribat, scripturus sit, scripserit.

I was asking, asked, had asked—what he was writing, had written, was going to write.

Quaerebam, quaesivi, quaesiveram—quid scriberet, scripsisset, scripturus esset.

I know why he comes.

Scio cur veniat.

I know why he came.

Scio cur venerit.

I knew why he came.

Sciebam cur veniret.

I knew why he had come.

Sciebam cur venisset.

* The Latin Perfect has two distinct meanings. Thus *fecit* is either 'I have done,' or 'I did.' The former is here called the Perfect with 'have,' and the latter the Perfect without 'have.'

EXERCISE L.

1. I ask¹ who *slew*² Clodius. 2. I asked³ what *you had done*. 3. He has asked why the ambassadors *have come*. 4. He asked³ why the ambassadors *had come*. 5. I will ask who *he is* and whence *he has come*. 6. You see⁴ what-sort-of (a man) *he is*. 7. I do not-know who *is speaking*. 8. I wish to know whether this *is* mine or yours. 9. He asked whether this⁴ *was* true or not.⁵ 10. Tell me⁶ whether iron or silver *is* the heavier. 11. I shall soon know what *you wish*. 12. I understand what (things) *you are telling*⁷ me.⁸ 13. Do you see⁸ how brave the soldiers *have been*? 14. I was⁹ uncertain where *you were*. 15. I do not know what *to do*¹⁰ with¹¹ the boys. 16. It is the part of a good consul to see what *is being done*.¹² 17. Men do not understand how great a revenue economy *is*. 18. It is uncertain what each¹³ day or¹⁴ night *may bring*.¹⁵ 19. I do not see how¹⁶ past pleasures can relieve present evils. 20. No one knows what *will happen*¹⁷ to-morrow.

1. Use *quaero* as the verb of 'asking' and *ago* as the verb of 'doing' in this exercise. 2. *Interficio*. 3. Indicative perfect without 'have.' 4. Plural. 5. 'Or-not' in indirect questions is *necne*. 6. Dative; see § 47. 7. *Narro*. 8. 'Do you see' (plural), a direct question: use

the appended *-ne*. 9. Imperfect. 10. Present subjunctive. 11. *De* (prep.) with ablative. 12. Present Subjunctive Passive. 13. Use feminine of *quisque*. 14. Aut. 15. *Fero*. 16. 'How,' 'in what way,' *quomodo*. 17. 'What will happen:' say, 'what is about to be.'

LI.—UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

§ 67. The Subjunctive is used when a Verb is subjoined to another Verb to express Purpose.

Ut = 'that,' 'in order that.'

ne = 'that . . . not,' 'in order that . . . not.'

The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by the Rule for the Sequence of Tenses. (§ 66.)

I write, will write, have written—that you may know.
Scribo, scribam, scripsi—ut scias.

I was writing, had written, wrote—that you might know.
Scribebam, scripseram, scripsi—ut scires.

I come that I may see.
Venio ut videam.

I went away that I might not see.
Abii ne viderem.

§ 68. The Infinitive in English expressing a purpose may be translated by *ut* with the Subjunctive.

He sends, will send, has sent—ambassadors to sue-for peace.
Mittit, mittet, misit—legatos ut pacem petant.

He was sending, had sent, sent—ambassadors to sue-for peace.
Mittebat, miserat, misit—legatos ut pacem peterent.

EXERCISE LI.

1. He reads *that he may learn*.¹ 2. The soldier sleeps *that he may recover* his strength.² 3. Laws are given³ *that* the citizens *may live* peaceably and⁴ happily. 4. Let us prepare⁵ arms *that we may attack* others.⁶ 5. He fights *in order that* the enemy *may not take* the city. 6. The slave comes *to shut* the gates. 7. Let them read *that they may learn*. 8. We eat *to live*, we do not live *to eat*. 9. He built the house *in order to dwell* in it. 10. The slave came *to shut* the gates of the city. 11. I came here *in order to see* you. 12. Let him learn *that he may be able* to teach. 13. I am-silent, *in order not to increase*⁷ your grief. 14. I hope he will come⁸ *to see* me. 15. He reads *that he may not be* ignorant.⁹ 16. Our ancestors fetched Cincinnatus from¹⁰ the plough, *in order that he might be* dictator.¹¹ 17. Romulus, *in order to increase*⁷ the number of (his) citizens, opened an asylum. 18. I will strive *that you may be able to think*¹² me a friend.¹³ 19. Many (men) praise others,⁶ *that (they) may be praised by*¹⁰ them.¹⁴ 20. We wage war *in order that we may enjoy* peace.

1. Disco. 2. Vires, tum, 3 f. pl. 3. 'Are given:' say, 'have been given.'
 4. Que appended to the second adverb.
 5. 'Let us prepare,' 1 pl. pres. subj. of paro. 6. Alius. 7. Augeo. 8. Acc.

with inf.; see § 29. 9. Ignarus. 10. Ab (prep.) with abl. 11. Complementary Nominative; see § 17. 12. Puto. 13. Complementary Accusative; see § 22. 14. Ille.

LII.—UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE—continued.

2. VERBS OF 'ASKING,' &C.

§ 69. Verbs of 'asking,' 'commanding,' 'advising,' and 'striving,' are followed by *ut* or *ne* with Subjunctive.

"With 'ask,' 'command,' 'advise,' and 'strive,'
 By *ut* translate Infinitive;
 But never be this rule forgot,
 Put *ne* for *ut* when there's a 'not.'"

The Tense of the Subjunctive follows the Rule for the Sequence of Tenses.

I asked him to come to Rome.
Rogavi illum ut Romam veniret.

I advise you not to do this.
Suadeo tibi ne hoc facias.

EXERCISE LII.

1. I will strive to conquer. 2. Take care to teach him. 3. Themistocles persuaded the Athenians to leave the city. 4. I beg¹ (you) not to forsake me. 5. He asked for money to be given to him² (meaning himself). 6. He ordered³ the ambassadors to be dismissed. 7. I urge you to read these books. 8. He advised⁴ them to drive their cattle⁵ to⁶ the city. 9. I have asked him⁷ to stop at Rome. 10. It is certain that the boy is striving⁸ to learn. 11. His⁹ father asks me to lead him¹⁰ into the camp. 12. His father asked me to lead him into the camp. 13. I command you¹¹ to do this. 14. He asked me not to hasten.¹² 15. He commanded (them) to depart.¹³ 16. It is required¹⁴ of¹⁵ a friend that he be sincere. 17. I asked¹⁶ (you) to do¹⁷ this. 18. When will you ask him to set-out from Rome? 19. I begged¹⁸ (you) to go. 20. He commands me not to go-away.¹⁹

1. Precor. 2. Say, 'he asked that money might be given to himself.' 3. Say, 'he ordered that the ambassadors might be dismissed.' 4. Moneo. 5. Plural of pecus. 6. Ad with acc. 7. Ille. 8. Acc. with inf. 9. Ejus. 10.

Is, ea, id. 11. Dative. 12. Propero. 13. Discedo. 14. Present indicative passive of postulo. 15. Ab with ablative. 16. Say, 'I asked (perf.) that thou mightst do this.' 17. Facio. 18. Oro. 19. Abscedo.

LIII.—UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE—continued.

3. VERBS OF 'FEARING.'

§ 70. With Verbs of 'fearing,'

Ne = 'lest,' 'that.'
ut = 'that . . . not.'

Timeo ne, I fear he will.
Timeo ut, I fear he won't.

The Tense of the Subjunctive follows the Rule for the Sequence of Tenses.

But the English Future is to be translated by the Latin Present Subjunctive.

I fear he will come.

Timeo ne veniat.

I fear he will not come.

Timeo ut veniat.

EXERCISE LIII.

1. I fear¹ *we may not be able* to defend the city. · 2. I fear *that the general will lead*² the soldiers out-of³ the camp. 3. I feared⁴ *that the general would not lead*² the soldiers out-of³ the camp. 4. I fear *you will not support* all these toils. 5. I am-afraid *that the enemy will attack*⁵ us in-the-night.⁶ 6. I am afraid⁷ your friend *will come* too-late. 7. I fear *that he will be conquered*. 8. I feared⁴ *that he would come*. 9. I feared⁴ *that he would not come*. 10. I do not fear *that you will do*⁸ anything⁹ foolishly. 11. I fear¹⁰ *you will perish*. 12. I am-afraid *that we shall be cut-off*. 13. I feared *you would not escape*. 14. I fear *I may not be able* to recover¹¹ the ornaments. 15. Do not fear¹² *that I shall hurt him*.¹³ 16. I fear¹⁴ *that you may choose-rather* to be feared¹⁵ than to be loved¹⁶ by your countrymen.¹⁷ 17. There-was¹⁸ great¹⁹ fear²⁰ at Rome *lest the Gauls should return*²¹ again to Rome. 18. Consternation seized²² the soldiers *lest Scipio's wound should prove*²³ mortal.²⁴ 19. There-is no danger of your *not finding*²⁵ the place. 20. There-was²⁶ a danger of the enemy's *taking* the city by storm.²⁷

1. In translating sentences 1-5 inclusive, use *timeo* as the verb of fearing. 2. *Educo*, xl, ctum. 3. E with abl. 4. Perfect without 'have,' followed by the imperfect subjunctive. 5. *Adorior*. 6. 'In-the-night,' noctu. 7. In translating sentences 6-10 inclusive, use *vereor* as the verb of fearing. 8. *Facio*. 9. Neuter of quis. 10. In translating sentences 11-15 inclusive, use *metuo* as the verb of fearing. 11. *Recipio*. 12. Ne with perf. subj.; see Ex. X., note 6. 13. Dative;

see § 48. 14. *Vereor*. 15. *Metuo*. 16. *Dilligo*. 17. 'By your countrymen:' say, 'by the citizens,' ablative of the personal agent with preposition a (ab). 18. Perfect. 19. *Grandis*. 20. *Timor*. 21. *Redeo*. 22. *Capio*. 23. Imperf. subj. of sum. 24. *Mortiferus*. 25. 'Of your not finding:' say, 'lest (ne) you may not find' (non invenias). 26. Imperfect. 27. 'Of the enemy's taking the city by storm:' say, 'lest (ne) the enemy might take-by-storm the city.'

LIV.—QUIN WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 71. Quin, 'that,' is used with the Subjunctive Mood after the following negative and interrogative expressions:—

I do not doubt that . . .

Non dubito quin . . .

No-one doubts that . . .

Nemo dubitat quin . . .

There is no doubt that . . .

Non est dubium quin . . .

Who doubts that . . . ?

Quis dubitat quin . . . ?

As regards the Tense of the Subjunctive, the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses must be observed.

There is no doubt that he fears.

Non est dubium quin timeat.

There was no doubt that he feared.

Non erat dubium quin timeret.

EXERCISE LIV.

1. There is no doubt *that* the enemy *are preparing-for*¹ war.
2. No-one doubts *that we have waged* many wars. 3. There was² no doubt *that the citizens defended*³ the city bravely. 4. There is no doubt *that he said*⁴ this.⁵ 5. Who doubts *that the sun is larger* than the moon?⁶ 6. Who doubts *that you did* this?⁷ 7. I do not doubt *that you have spoken*⁸ the truth.⁹ 8. Who can doubt *that Hannibal was*⁴ a very great¹⁰ general?¹¹ 9. I do not doubt *that you wish*¹² to benefit¹³ me. 10. I do not doubt *that you are* friendly to us. 11. There is no doubt *that he will write*¹⁴ to you.¹⁵ 12. There was² no doubt *that Balbus had killed*¹⁶ Caius. 13. There is no doubt *that these (things) are* true. 14. Who doubts *that virtue and*¹⁷ vice *are* contrary to each other?¹⁸ 15. Who doubts *that the world*¹⁹ *was made* by design?²⁰ 16. Agamemnon does not doubt *that Troy will shortly perish*.¹⁴ 17. There is no doubt *that Balbus has set-out* for Rome. 18. There is no doubt *that Caesar will set out*¹⁴ for Capua. 19. There is no doubt *that I shall remain*²¹ here. 20. There was² no doubt *that our soldiers fought*²² very bravely.

1. Paro. 2. Imperf. 3. Imperf. subj. of defendo after an imperf. indic. 4. Perf. subj. after a pres. indic. 5. Neuter plural. 6. Ablative of comparison; see § 57. 7. Neuter singular. 8. Dico. 9. Verum, 2 n. 10. Summus. 11. Dux. 12. Volo. 13. Prosum with

dat.; see § 49. 14. Fut. Part. with sim. &c.; see § 66, note. 15. Ad with acc. 16. Interficio. 17. Que appended to the second noun. 18. 'To each other;' say, 'between themselves,' inter se. 19. Mundus. 20. Consilium. 21. Maneo. 22. Imperf. subj. after an imperf. indic.

LV.—QUIN WITH SUBJUNCTIVE—*continued.*

§ 72. *Quin*, 'but,' 'that . . . not,' 'so that . . . not,' governs a Subjunctive when it stands for *qui non* after Negatives and Interrogatives implying a Negative.

There is no one but understands=

There is no one who does not understand.

Nemo est quin (=qui non) intelligat.

EXERCISE LV.

1. Who is there *but weeps*? 2. There was¹ no one *but wept*. 3. There is no one *but knows* that men are mortal.² 4. No one is so³ iron-hearted *as not to love*⁴ his-own children. 5. Who is there *that does not hate* saucy childhood? 6. There is no day⁵ *that I do not write* a letter.⁶ 7. There is no day *that I do not hear* many wonderful (things). 8. There was¹ nobody *who did not rejoice*⁷ greatly. 9. No one is so brave *but he* sometimes⁸ *feels*⁹ fear.¹⁰ 10. There was¹ no day *but Tullius walked*⁷ with me.¹¹ 11. There is hardly a day¹² *that Satrius does not keep-coming* to my house.¹³ 12. Who was¹ (there) *that did not hate*¹⁴ you? 13. Who is (there) *that weeps not* sometimes?¹⁵ 14. No one is so³ wise *as never to err*.¹⁶ 15. There is nothing so³ difficult *that it cannot be accomplished*. 16. There is no one *but can do*¹⁷ this. 17. No one is so³ good *as not sometimes*¹⁸ *to sin*.¹⁹ 18. Who is (there) *that does not keep*²⁰ swine? 19. Who is (there) *but knows* that² the soldier is honest?²¹ 20. Who is (there) *but sees* that² you are happy?²²

1. Imperfect. 2. Acc. with inf. 3. 'So' before an adjective is tam. 4. 'As not to love:' say, 'but-that he loves.' 5. Dies in the singular is common, in the plural masculine. When it means 'a day,' it is usually masculine; but if it means 'time,' dies is feminine. In the present exercise it is masculine. 6. Litterae (pl.). 7. Imperf. subj. after imperf. indic. 8. Nonnunquam. 9. Sentio. 10. Timor. 11. Cum is appended to the ab-

lative of the personal pronouns, mecum, tecum, vobiscum, &c. 12. Say, 'there is almost (fere) no day.' 13. Domus follows the construction of the names of towns; see § 32. 14. The pluperfect of odi has the meaning of an ordinary imperfect. 15. Aliquando. 16. 'As never to err:' say, 'but that he sometimes (nonnunquam) errs.' 17. Facio. 18. Interdum. 19. Pecco. 20. Habeo. 21. Probus. 22. Beatus.

LVI.—QUIN WITH SUBJUNCTIVE—*continued.*

§ 73. *Quin* is also used after negative expressions of hindrance, opposition, &c., and to denote that a

certain thing never happened *without* something else happening.

§ 74. The following phrases are followed by the Subjunctive:—

It cannot be but that, *feri non potest quin . . .*

I cannot but, *facere non possum quin . . .*

To leave nothing undone to, *nihil praetermittere quin . . .*

To be within a very little, *minimum abesse quin . . .*

What reason is there why . . . not? *quid causae est quin ? . . .*

There is no reason why . . . not, *nulla causa est quin . . .*

The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive is determined by the Rule for the Sequence of Tenses.

She never sees a captive without weeping.

Nunquam illa videt captivum quin fleat.

She never saw a captive without weeping.

Nunquam illa vidit captivum quin flet.

The Number and Person of the Subjunctive will be the same as that of the Verb in the former part of the sentence.

I cannot but laugh.

Facere non possum quin rideam.

We cannot but laugh.

Facere non possumus quin rideamus.

But *feri non potest quin* and *minimum abest quin* are always Impersonal (3rd pers. sing.).

EXERCISE LVI.

1. I cannot but weep. 2. He never sees the boy without laughing.¹ 3. I cannot but help² Balbus. 4. It cannot be but that the soul³ is immortal. 5. I left nothing undone to finish⁴ the business. 6. Balbus was within a very little of perishing.⁵ 7. What reason is there why they should not rejoice?⁶ 8. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors.⁷ 9. I let no day pass⁸ without writing to⁹ you. 10. I could¹⁰ not but declare¹¹ to you¹² my opinion. 11. I cannot but send daily to⁹ you. 12. They were within a very little of being killed.¹³ 13. He was very near¹⁴ gaining that¹⁵ victory. 14. There is no reason why he should not come.⁶ 15. I never go-out without seeing him.¹⁶ 16. I left nothing undone to appease him.¹⁶ 17. No one ever sees him¹⁵ without calling¹⁷ him a traitor. 18. I am within a very little of being most miserable.¹⁸ 19. I cannot but send this letter¹⁹ to you. 20. What

reason is there why *they should not be able* to read Cicero's speeches?

1. Rideo. 2. Subvenio with dative; see § 48. 3. Animus. 4. After the perf. indic. without 'have,' use the imperf. subj. 5. Say, 'very-little was-wanting (perf. without 'have') but that Balbus might perish' (imperf. subj. of pereō). 6. Present. 7. 'We shall be conquerors,' accus. with inf. and see § 29. 8. Perf. without 'have' of intermitto. 9. Ad with acc. 10. Perfect without 'have.'

11. Declaro. 12. Dative; see § 47. 13. Say, 'very-little was-wanting (perf. without 'have') but that they might be killed' (interficio). 14. 'He was very near,' 'he was within a very little of:' say, 'very-little was-wanting but that he might gain (reporto).' 15. Ille, a, ud. 16. Is, ea, id. 17. Compello. 18. Say, 'very-little is-wanting but-that I may-be most miserable.' 19. Epistola.

LVII.—QUOMINUS WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ 75. Quominus (lit. 'by-which-the-less') is used with the Subjunctive after Verbs of 'hindering,' 'detering,' and 'preventing,' and often answers to the English Verbal Noun in *-ing* combined with the Preposition 'from.'

Sickness hindered me from doing it=

Sickness hindered me by-which-the-less I might do it.

Valetudo prohibuit quominus id facerem.

Nothing deters Caius from obeying (his) parents=

Nothing deters Caius by-which-the-less he may obey (his) parents.

Nihil Caium deterret quominus parentibus obediat.

EXERCISE LVII.

1. Nothing will deter (me)¹ *from obeying*² you. 2. He³ deterred⁴ me *from coming*. 3. Nothing shall deter me *from siding-with* you. 4. Nothing deters a wise (man) *from obeying*⁵ the laws of virtue. 5. Nothing ought⁶ to deter children *from obeying*² their parents. 6. Nothing ought⁶ to deter a citizen *from siding-with* (his) country. 7. Nobody can prohibit⁷ us *from worshipping* God. 8. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from coming* to you. 9. Scaurus was prevented⁴ by force *from carrying-off* the slave. 10. An accident prevented⁴ (me) *from doing* this. 11. Nothing hinders⁸ (us) *from doing* this. 12. Age⁹ does not prevent⁸ us *from cultivating* literature. 13. Nothing will prevent¹⁰ (me) *from reading* your book. 14. This prevented⁴ (me) *from seeing* my brother. 15. Nothing prevents (you) *from doing* this. 16. Nothing hinders (them) *from crossing*¹¹ the river. 17. What prevents (us) *from waging* war by sea and land?¹² 18. What prevents (you) *from carrying*¹³ all your¹⁴ (property) with you?¹⁵ 19. There was

nothing to prevent¹⁶ (his) *coming*. 20. What prevents a wise¹⁷ (man) *from being* happy?

1. When the accusative is a pronoun of the first or second person, it is generally omitted. 2. Obedio with dative; see § 48. After an Indicative Present or Future use a Present Subjunctive; after an Indicative Imperfect or Perfect without 'have,' use an Imperfect Subjunctive; see § 66. The number and person of the verb in the Subjunctive will be the same as that of the object of preventing, &c. 3. Hic. 4. Perfect. 5. Pareo with dat.; see § 48. 6. Debeo. 7. From sentences 7 to 10 inclusive, use prohibeo as the verb

of hindering, &c. 8. Impedio. 9. Aetas. 10. From sentence 13 to the end of the exercise, use obsto as the verb of hindering, &c. 11. Transeo. 12. 'By sea and land,' terrâ marique. 13. Porto. 14. Neuter plural of tuus. 15. Cum is appended to the abl. case of personal pronouns. 16. 'There was nothing to prevent his coming: 'say, 'nothing prevented (Imperf.) by-which-the-less he might come.' 17. Literally, 'what prevents by-which-the-less a wise (man) (nom.) may be happy?'

LVIII.—THE GERUND.

§ 76. The Gerund is a Verbal Noun in the Neuter Gender possessing four Cases,—the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, ending in -ndi, -ndo, -ndum, -ndo.

It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns ending in -ing, as 'walking,' 'running,' &c.; and is a kind of supplement to the Infinitive, forming, as it were, oblique cases to that part of the Verb.

§ 77. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives, and those Adjectives which govern a Genitive, such as cupidus, &c. (Exercise XXXIII.)

The art of writing is learnt.

Ars scribendi discitur.

I am desirous of hearing you.

Cupidus te audiendi sum.

§ 78. The Dative of the Gerund is used after certain Verbs and expressions to denote an object or purpose, and also after Adjectives denoting fitness or usefulness, such as aptus, utilis, &c. (Exercise XXXVIII.)

I choose-out this place for reposing.

Quiescendo hunc locum eligo.

He pays attention to reading.

Dat operam legendo.

He is fit for reading.

Aptus est legendo.

Water is good for drinking.

Aqua utilis est bibendo.

§ 79. The Accusative of the Gerund is only used with Prepositions, and most commonly with *ad*, 'for,' 'for the purpose of,' and *inter*, 'during,' 'while,' 'amid.'

For enduring labours.

Ad tolerandum labores.

For the purpose of writing.

Ad scribendum.

I learn during (*or*, while) writing.

Disco inter scribendum.

§ 80. The Ablative of the Gerund expresses Cause or Manner, or it follows Prepositions, especially *de* and *in*.

We learn by teaching.

Docendo discimus.

They deliberate about fighting.

De pugnando deliberant.

An orator practised in speaking.

Orator in dicendo exercitatus.

§ 81. The Gerund governs the same case as its Verb.

Of writing letters.

Scribendi epistolas. (Acc.)

By sparing the conquered.

Parcendo victis. (Dat.)

EXERCISE LVIII.

1. The art of *navigating* is very useful. 2. The poor are born¹ to labour.² 3. Man³ is born¹ to understand² and act. 4. The mind⁴ of man³ is fed⁵ by learning. 5. Can he not learn⁶ by teaching? 6. Do boys learn⁶ by playing? [No.] 7. We are all desirous⁷ of seeing and hearing many (things). 8. This time of the year is suitable for sowing.² 9. Caesar acquired glory by giving, helping,⁸ (and) forgiving.⁹ 10. He attempted to obtain¹⁰ friends by flattering. 11. I am desirous⁷ of satisfying the people.¹¹ 12. Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be found-out by inquiring.¹² 13. The wits¹³ are sharpened by dealing-with letters.¹⁴ 14. Economy is the science of avoiding needless expenses. 15. By doing¹⁵ nothing men learn⁶ to do¹⁵ ill.¹⁶ 16. For living² well a short time is long enough. 17. Duilius seized-on the ships of the enemy in-the-midst-the fighting.¹⁷ 18. Q. Cicero sent (his) cohorts to forage¹⁸ in¹⁹ neighbouring fields. 19. Cato's son, (through) love²⁰ of fighting,

stayed²¹ with the troops.²² 20. No reason²³ for²⁴ taking-up²⁵ arms against²⁶ one's native-land is defensible.²⁷

1. Perf. of nascor. 2. Ad with acc. of gerund. 3. Homo. 4. Mens. 5. Pres. Pass. of alo. 6. Disco. 7. Cupidus. 8. Sublevo. 9. Ignosco. 10. Adipiscor. 11. Populus. 12. Quaero. 13. 'Wits,' mens with verb in the singular. 14. Litterae (plur.). 15. Ago. 16. Male (adv.). 17. Say, 'during (or, while) fighting,' inter with acc. 18. Say, 'for-the-sake-of,' and

use causā with genitive. 19. 'In' here means 'into'; therefore use in with acc. 20. Ablative without a preposition. 21. Perfect of remaneo. 22. 'With the troops:' say, 'in the army.' 23. Causa. 24. Say, 'of,' and use the genitive of the gerund. 25. Capio. 26. Contra (prep.) with acc. 27. Justus, a, um.

LIX.—THE ATTRIBUTIVE GERUNDIVE.

§ 82. The Gerundive is a Verbal Adjective in -ndus, -nda, -ndum, used in agreement with Substantives and Pronouns, and generally signifying that something ought or is to be done.

The field must be ploughed.
Ager arandus est.

The letter must be written.
Epistola scribenda est.

§ 83. If the Agent by whom anything must be done is added, it is expressed by the Dative.

That stain must be blotted-out by you.
Delenda vobis est illa macula.

EXERCISE LIX.

1. (Our) country must be defended. 2. Men must be instructed.¹ 3. The fields must be cultivated. 4. New names must be given² to new things.³ 5. Cato is a man⁴ not⁵ to be despised. 6. We must do⁶ this. 7. The utmost⁷ praise is to be attributed⁸ to filial-duty. 8. An orator has to bear in mind three points.⁹ 9. We must fortify these cities. 10. God is both¹⁰ to be loved¹¹ and feared¹² by us. 11. We should praise virtue even¹³ in an enemy.¹⁴ 12. Ought not glory to be preferred¹⁵ to riches?¹⁶ 13. Carthage must be destroyed.¹⁷ 14. I am-of-opinion¹⁸ that Carthage¹⁹ must be destroyed. 15. Injustice and intemperance are to be avoided.²⁰ 16. Prudence is the knowledge of things³ to be desired²¹ and to be shunned.²⁰ 17. The house was given them to plunder.²² 18. Amulius de-

livered²² Romulus and Remus to some²⁴ servants²⁵ to be exposed.²⁶
 19. Life is not to be enjoyed but to be used. 20. He gave-up²³
 Eumenes to (his) relatives²⁷ to be buried.²⁸

1. Doceo. 2. Pono. 3. Res. 4. Vir.
 5. Haud. 6. Facio. 7. Summus. 8.
 Tribuo. 9. Say, 'three (things) must be
 seen by an orator' (*dat.*). 10. 'Both ...
 and,' et ... et. 11. Dilligo. 12. Timeo.
 13. Etiam. 14. Hostis (*sing.*). 15. Say,
 'is not (nonne) glory to be preferred,' &c.

16. Dative of divitiæ. 17. Deleo. 18.
 Censeo. 19. Acc. with inf. 20. Fugio.
 21. Expeto. 22. 'To plunder,' gerundive.
 23. Say, 'surrendered,' trado. 24. Quidam.
 25. Minister. 26. Exponendus. 27. Pro-
 pinquus. 28. Accusative singular in
 agreement with Eumenem.

LX.—THE GERUNDIVE FOR THE GERUND.

§ 84. Instead of the Gerund governing its case (as in Exercise LVIII.) we may use the Gerundive agreeing with it as an Adjective.

The intention of writing a letter.

Consilium scribendi epistolam. (Gerund.)

Consilium scribendæ epistolæ. (Gerundive.)

In this construction

- (1.) The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
- (2.) The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive and made to agree with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case; thus,

The art of writing letters

Ars scribendi epistolas (Gerund)

becomes

Ars scribendarum epistolarum (Gerundive)

in the following way:—

- (1.) The Accusative epistolas is put in the same case as the Gerund scribendi; consequently epistolarum.
- (2.) The Gerund scribendi is changed into the Gerundive scribendus, a, um, and made to

agree with *epistolarum* in Gender, Number, and Case; hence *scribendarum*.

Similarly we have:

The plan of founding a city.
Consilium condendi urbem. (Gerund.)
Consilium condendae urbis. (Gerundive.)
 By pursuing the enemy.
Persequendo hostes. (Gerund.)
Persequendis hostibus. (Gerundive.)
 For (the purpose of) appeasing the gods.
Ad placandos deos.
 In praising the conquerors.
In laudandis victoribus.

EXERCISE LX.

1. I am desirous¹ of reading the books. 2. The art of educating boys is difficult. 3. Demosthenes was² eagerly-desirous³ of hearing Plato. 4. Pericles was admirably-skilled⁴ in ruling⁵ the state.⁶ 5. Caesar is skilled in waging war. 6. Brutus was slain⁷ in freeing (his) country. 7. He sent ambassadors to⁸ seek-for⁹ peace. 8. Caius is engaged¹⁰ (in) writing letters.¹¹ 9. I amuse-myself with reading books. 10. He came to seek-for¹² peace. 11. The Albans have made¹³ me (their) leader for¹⁴ carrying-on¹⁵ the war. 12. Cicero wrote a book on contempt of¹⁶ death. 13. Clodius framed a pretext¹⁷ for¹⁸ changing¹⁹ (his) plan. 14. Tiberius Gracchus was elected¹³ one-of-three-commissioners²⁰ for¹⁴ dividing the lands.²¹ 15. Two-men²² were chosen¹³ to dedicate¹⁴ the temple. 16. I shall now²³ speak²⁴ of²⁵ selecting a general.²⁶ 17. He has snatched-away²⁷ (from) me the hope of finishing the business. 18. They adopt the resolution²⁸ of setting the city on fire. 19. The Roman youth²⁹ were trained-up³ for⁸ managing¹⁵ the Commonwealth. 20. Elegance in speaking³⁰ is increased by reading the orators and poets.

1. Cupidus. 2. Imperfect. 3. Studiosus. 4. 'Admirably-skilled;' say, 'very skilful,' superl. of *peritus*, a, um, with genitive; see § 45. 5. Rego. 6. Civitas. 7. Interficio. 8. Ad with acc. 9. Peto. 10. 'Is engaged in,' operam dat, with dative. Opera, 1 f. 'pains,' 'labour.' 11. Epistola. 12. Use causā, 'for-the-sake-of,' with genitive. 13. Creo with Complementary Accusative; see § 22. 14. Dative. 15. Gero. 16. 'On contempt of death;' say, 'concerning (de with abl.) despising (contemno) death (death to be

despised). 17. 'To frame a pretext,' causam fingere. Fingo, finxi, fictum, 3. 18. 'For:' say, 'of' with gen. 19. Muto. 20. 'One-of-three-commissioners,' triumvir, gen. triumviri, 2 m. 21. Ager. 22. 'Two-men,' duumviri, orum, 2 m. pl. 23. Jam. 24. Dico. 25. De (prep.) with abl. 26. Imperator. 27. Eripio with dative. 28. 'To adopt a resolution,' consilium capere. 29. Juventus, utis, 3 f. with sing. verb. 30. 'In speaking:' say, 'of speaking,' loquor.

LXI.—IMPERSONAL GERUNDIVE.

§ 85. The Gerundive of Intransitive Verbs is used only in the Nominative Singular Neuter, with the tenses of *esse*, as an impersonal phrase governing the same case as the Verb.*

We must fight =
It is meet to be fought by us.
Pugnandum est nobis. (Intrans.)

(One) must obey the laws.
Obtemperandum est legibus. (Dat.)

EXERCISE LXI.

1. (We) must all die. 2. I must go.¹ 3. (We) must strive² to conquer. 4. (We) must obey³ the laws of virtue. 5. (We) must spare (our) enemies.⁴ 6. (We) must do⁵ (our) duty.⁶ 7. (We) must aid the body. 8. We must resist old-age. 9. (We) must not believe all (men). 10. (We) must not forget⁷ benefits. 11. We must obey⁸ the lessons of virtue. 12. Balbus ought not to be envied.⁹ 13. What assistance⁹ do you think¹⁰ (we) must use?¹¹ 14. Each-one¹² must use his-own judgment.¹³ 15. I had to go¹⁴ into¹⁵ the camp. 16. (One) must adapt-oneself to circumstances.¹⁶ 17. (We) shall¹⁷ have to make-use-of¹⁸ words. 18. (We) must fight bravely in-order-that¹⁹ the enemy²⁰ may not take the city by storm.²¹ 19. Here,²² soldiers, must you either²³ conquer or die. 20. One (man) must not fight with²⁴ two.

1. *Eo*. 2. *Enitor*, *nisus sum*, 3 *dep.*, followed by *ut* with subj.; see § 69. 3. *Obtempero*, with dat.; see § 48. 4. *Inimicus*, dat.; see § 48. 5. *Fungor*, with abl.; see § 60. 6. *Officium*, 2 n. 7. *Obliviscor* with gen.; see § 42. 8. Say, 'it is not to be envied to Balbus.' *Invideo* takes a dative; see § 48. 9. *Auxilium*, abl. governed by *utor*; see § 60. 10. *Puto*. 11. 'We must use:' say, 'is to be used,' acc. with inf. after a verb of 'thinking'; see § 24. 12. 'Each-one,' use dat. of *quisque*, the dative of the agent. 13. 'His-

own (suus) judgment (*consilium*),' abl. after *utor*. 14. 'I have to go,' 'I must go,' = *proficiscendum est mihi*; similarly, 'I had to go' = *proficiscendum erat mihi*. 15. 'Into,' in with acc. 16. 'Circumstances:' say, 'time,' *tempus*. 17. Use the third person singular future of *sum*. 18. 'To make-use-of,' *utor* with abl. 19. 'That . . . not,' *ne*. 20. Plural. 21. Say, 'May not take-by-storm the city;' see § 67. 22. 'Here,' *hic*. 23. 'Either . . . or,' *aut . . . aut*. 24. *Cum* (prep.) with abl.

* Most grammarians limit the term Gerund to the oblique cases; others include the Nominative and consider the form which we have here called the Impersonal Gerundive to be the Nominative of the Gerund used as subject to *est*, *erat*, &c., predicating existence, with a Dative of the Agent, the whole expression thus conveying the idea of duty, necessity, obligation. (Roby, *Latin Grammar*, § 1397.)

LXII.—SUPINES.

§ 86. The Supine in *-um* is used after Verbs expressing or implying motion, to indicate the purpose or design of the motion.

He sent ambassadors to ask-for help.
Misit legatos rogatum auxilium.

§ 87. The Supine in *-u* is chiefly used with certain Adjectives.

Wonderful to tell.
Mirabile dictu.

EXERCISE LXII.

1. The Aedui send ambassadors to¹ Caesar to ask-for help.
 2. The Spartans² sent Agesilaus into Asia to make-war.³ 3. Hannibal was recalled to defend (his) country. 4. Parents ought,⁴ in presence-of⁵ (their) children, to speak⁶ nothing shameful to hear.
 5. This book is useful to read. 6. A prodigy befel marvellous⁷ to behold.⁸ 7. He sent ambassadors to announce⁹ to Caesar. 8. Chosen men went¹⁰ to Delphi to consult the oracle. 9. Caesar sent (his) cohorts to forage in¹¹ the neighbouring fields. 10. Ambassadors came into the camp of the Aequi to complain-of acts-of-injustice.¹²
 11. We came to Rome to look-on-at the games. 12. Most¹³ (men) according to custom¹⁴ went¹⁵ to greet the consul. 13. This wine is pleasant¹⁶ to drink.¹⁷ 14. What is it better to avoid, what to seek¹⁸?
 15. The children of Ancus went¹⁹ into exile²⁰ to Suessa Pometia. 16. Maecenas goes²¹ to play, I to sleep. 17. (Things) which are shameful to hear are also²² shameful to speak. 18. They say that the city will be taken.²³ 19. He said that the walls were going to be built.²⁴ 20. The war with²⁵ the Helvetii having been finished, representatives²⁶ of nearly the whole²⁷ of Gaul came-together²⁸ to¹ Caesar to congratulate (him).

1. Ad with acc. 2. Lacedaemonii. 3. Bello, avi, atum. 4. Debeo. 5. Coram (prep.) with abl. 6. Infin. of dico. 7. Mirabilia. 8. Video. 9. Nuntio with dat., § 47. 10. Proficiscor. 11. 'In' here means 'into' and must be translated by in with acc. 12. 'Acts-of-injustice,' injurias, arum, 1 f. pl. 13. Plerique. 14. 'According to custom,' de more (mos, moris, 3 m., custom). 15. 'Went' im-

perfect of eo. 16. Jucundus. 17. Poto, avi, atum. 18. Peto. 19. 'Went,' 3rd plur. perf. ind. of eo, omitting v. 20. 'Into exile,' supine of exsulo, avi, atum. 21. Eo. 22. 'Also:' say, 'the same (things).' 23. The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the Supine in um and tri: see § 28, note. 24. 'With:' say, 'of.' 25. Legatus. 26. Totus. 27. Convenio.

EXAMINATION PAPERS ON THE SYNTAX.

I.

Exs. I.—III. (Pages 3, 4.)

NOTE.—In answers to the questions the pupil is required to give at least one example as an illustration of each Rule.

1. In what case do you put the Subject of a finite verb? In what respects does a finite verb agree with its nominative?

2. If two or more subjects are joined by *et*, what will be the number of the verb?

3. When must the pronoun subjects be expressed? What is the rule when subjects of different persons have a common predicate, and in what order are these nominatives placed?

4. In what respects does an adjective agree with its noun?

5. How do you translate 'the one—the other,' 'one—another,' 'some—others'?

6. What is the position of the word *que*, 'and,' in a Latin sentence? Translate into Latin, using *que* for 'and': 'Flowers and trees,' 'father and mother.'

7. Distinguish between *Caius ejus librum legit*, and *Caius suum librum legit*.

8. How do you translate 'neither—nor'?

9. What kind of Verbs govern the Accusative?

II.

Exs. IV., V. (Pages 5, 6.)

1. In what respects does a Relative agree with its Antecedent?

2. Translate 'he who,' 'she who,' 'that which,' 'those who' (masc.), 'those who' (fem.), 'those which' (neut.).

3. What is the case of the word 'which' in the sentence, 'Where is the pen which I gave you'?

4. Put in the plural:

Quam epistolam scripsisti, lēgi.

Mulierem video quae poma vendit.

Quod dixi, id non mutabo.

Servus, quem vides, portam claudet.

5. When is a substantive in apposition with another substantive? In what case do you put the latter substantive?

III.

Exs. VI., VII. (Pages 7, 8.)

1. What is a Verb of Incomplete Predication?

2. Explain the term Complementary Nominative. By what other name is it sometimes called?

3. What verbs take a Complementary Nominative after them?

4. What is the Complement of the Predicate? Underline the Com-

plement of the Predicate in each of the following sentences, and translate them into Latin:—‘He is rich.’ ‘He is an honest man.’ ‘He was elected consul.’

5. What tense is used to denote habitual or continuous action?

IV.

Exs. VIII.–XII. (Pages 9–12.)

1. In what case are Duration of Time and Measure of Space put in answer to the questions, ‘How long?’ ‘How far?’ &c.

2. Name some verbs which take a double accusative after them.

3. How are prohibitions expressed in Latin, when a particular person is addressed?

4. Give a list of Prepositions which are used with the accusative case.

5. What is the usual position of the Latin Preposition in regard to the word it governs? Name any exception to this rule.

6. After what verbs is the Complementary Accusative used?

V.

Exs. XIII.–XX. (Pages 13–19.)

1. What verbs are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive?

2. How do you translate ‘he,’ ‘she,’ ‘they’ (masc.), ‘they’ (fem.), in a sentence with ‘that’?

3. How is the English infinitive present translated after verbs of ‘hoping’ and ‘promising’?

4. In what tense should the Infinitive be put in a ‘that’ clause?

5. How are verbs of ‘saying’ when joined to a negative to be translated?

6. Name some impersonal phrases which are followed by the accusative and infinitive.

VI.

Exs. XXI.–XXIII. (Pages 20–23.)

1. In what case are names of towns put in answer to the question *Whither*?

2. What other substantives follow this rule?

3. In what case are the names of towns put in answer to the question *Where*?

4. What other substantives follow this rule?

5. What is the rule for the construction of the names of towns in answer to the question *Whence*?

6. What other substantives follow this rule?

7. Translate: ‘The one returned to Rome, the other set out for Tarentum.’

8. Translate: ‘We shall remain at Rome, they will set out from Athens.’

VII.

Exs. XXIV.–XXVIII. (Pages 23–28.)

1. Explain the terms Subjective Genitive, Objective Genitive.

2. What is a Genitive of Quality? What must accompany this Genitive?

3. Write in Latin three short sentences each introducing a Genitive of Quality.

4. How is indefinite price expressed after verbs of buying and selling? What are the principal forms used?

5. What Genitive often follows the Verb *Sum*? What English word must then be expressed in the translation?

6. Translate the following, and explain the construction of the words *tribunus*, *vir*, and *consilii*:—*Volscenus erat tribunus militum, vir consilii magni et virtutis.*

VIII.

Exs. XXIX.-XXXIII. (Pages 28-32.)

1. What do you understand by the Partitive Genitive? Which of the two genitives plural of *ego* and *tu* are used as partitives?

2. What verbs usually take a Genitive of the Object?

3. Name the impersonal verbs of feeling which take an accusative of the person and a genitive of the cause of the emotion.

4. After what verbs is the genitive used to denote the Charge?

5. What adjectives govern a genitive of the object?

IX.

Exs. XXXIV.-XXXIX. (Pages 33-37.)

1. Explain the Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.

2. What transitive verbs take an accusative of the direct object and a dative of the indirect object?

3. After what adjectives may the dative of the indirect object be used?

4. Give a list of verbs apparently transitive which take a dative of the indirect object.

5. What do you mean by the predicative dative of purpose?

6. Give three examples of your own of the predicative dative of purpose.

X.

Exs. XL.-XLIV. (Pages 38-43.)

1. What is the Ablative of the Instrument?

2. When is the ablative after a passive verb used with a preposition? When is it used without a preposition?

3. What prepositions govern the ablative alone?

4. Mention those which govern both accusative and ablative, and state when they govern the one case and when the other.

5. When should the English 'with' be translated by *cum* with the ablative, and when by the ablative only?

6. In what case do you put *Time* when?

7. Define as briefly as you can what is understood by an ablative absolute.

8. How must the perfect participle active in English be usually dealt with in Latin?

9. When must the English participle be translated by the Latin perfect participle, and when by the present participle?

10. The verb *Sum* has neither present nor perfect participle; by what words is its place taken?

XI.

Exs. XLV.-XLVIII. (Pages 44-47.)

1. How is the ablative used after comparatives?

2. Translate, 'Nothing is more beautiful than virtue.' In what other way can it be expressed?

3. What questions does the ablative of price answer?

4. How is the ablative of quality used? In what respect is it like the genitive of quality?

5. Mention some deponent verbs which take their object in the ablative.

6. Write in Latin three short sentences each introducing an ablative of price.

XII.

Exs. XLIX., I. (Pages 48-50.)

1. How is a Direct Question expressed in Latin?

2. Distinguish between *ne*, *nonne*, and *num* in Single Direct Questions.

3. How may 'whether—or' be translated in Alternative Direct Questions?

4. What is meant by an Indirect Question, and in what mood will its verb stand in Latin?

5. Distinguish between Primary and Historic Tenses. Which are the Primary Tenses and which are the Historic Tenses?

6. Give the general Rule for the Sequence of Tenses.

XIII.

Exs. LI.-LIII. (Pages 51-54.)

1. With what conjunctions is the subjunctive used to express purpose?

2. How is the tense of the subjunctive determined?

3. When the English infinitive expresses a purpose, how must it be translated?

4. What is the rule for the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of fearing?

5. How is the English future to be translated?

6. After what other verbs are *ut* and *ne* used with the subjunctive?

XIV.

Exs. LIV.-LVI. (Pages 55-57.)

1. Give some negative and interrogative expressions which are followed by *quin* and the subjunctive.

2. What does *quin* stand for in the sentence, *Nemo est quin legat*?

3. Give some negative expressions of hindrance, opposition, &c., which are followed by *quin* and the subjunctive. Which of them are always impersonal?

4. How is the tense of the subjunctive determined?

5. What will be the number and person of the subjunctive?

XV.

Ex. LVII. (Page 58.)

1. What is the literal English meaning of *quominus*? After what kind of verbs is it used?

2. Write a short sentence in Latin in which *quominus* answers to the English verbal noun in *-ing* combined with the preposition 'from.'

3. How are the tense, number, and person of the subjunctive determined after *quominus*?

4. Mention some of the Latin verbs which may be followed by *quominus*.

5. Translate 'by sea and land,' 'with us,' 'with me.'

XVI.

Exs. LVIII.-LXI. (Pages 59-64.)

1. What is the Gerund?

2. In what cases is it used? How is the nominative case supplied?

3. What case does it govern?

4. How is the genitive of the Gerund used?

5. When is the dative of the Gerund used?

6. When only is the accusative of the Gerund used?

7. How is the ablative of the Gerund used?

8. What does the Gerundive signify?

9. By what case is the agent of the Gerundive expressed?

10. How does *scribendi epistolam* become *scribendae epistolae*?

11. If the verb is intransitive or governs any other case than the accusative, how will the Gerundive be used?

XVII.

Ex. LXII. (Page 65.)

1. After what verbs is the supine in *-um* used? What does it then denote?

2. When is the supine in *-u* used?

3. *Audio viam munitum iri*. Translate and explain.

4. Translate in as many ways as

you can, 'He sent ambassadors to ask-for (*peto*) peace.'

5. Write down the supine in *-um* of *queror*, *gratulor*, *saluto*, *rogo*, *revoco*, and the supine in *-u* of *dico*, *invenio*, *video*, *cognosco*, *audio*, *lego*, *peto*.

6. Translate, 'The soldiers had been sent to forage,' 'What is so pleasant to hear?'

VOCABULARIES.

[Marks of quantity have been placed over those syllables only where it is possible for a boy to make a mistake in pronunciation.]

Vocabulary I.

And, et.
arms, arma, orum, 2 n. pl.
Balbus, Balbus, 2 m.
blame, to, culpo, avi, atum, 1.
boy, puer, eri, 2 m.
bravely, fortiter.
Caius, Caius, 2 m.
children, libēri, orum, 2 m. pl.
conquer, to, vinco, vīci, victum, 3.
fall, to, cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, 3.
fight, to, pugno, avi, atum, 1.
flow, to, fluo, fluxi, fluxum, 3.
fly, to, fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3.
grow, to, cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3.
honesty, prōbitas, ātis, 3 f.
ill, to be, aegrōto, avi, atum, 1.
increase, to, cresco, crēvi, crētum, 3.
laugh, to, rīdeo, rīsi, risum, 2.
learn, to, disco, didici, 3.
master, māgister, tri, 2 m.
old-man, sēnex, sēnis, 3 m.
one—another, ālius—ālius.
the one—the other, alter—alter.
parent, pārens, ntis, 3 c.
praise, to, laudo, avi, atum, 1.
read, to, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
riches, divītiæ, arum, 1 f. pl.
shepherd, pastor, ōris, 3 m.
sing, to, cāno, cēcini, cantum, 3.
slay, to, interficio, feci, fectum, 3.
soldier, milēs, itis, 3 m.
take-a-walk, to, ambulo, avi, atum, 1.
take-up, to, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3.

teach, to, docēo, tui, ctum, 2.
there, ibi.
time, tempus, ōris, 3 n.
tree, arbor, ōris, 3 f.
virtue, virtus, ūtis, 3 f.
water, āqua, 1 f.
woman, mūlier, ēris, 3 f.
write to, scribo, psi, ptum, 3.

Vocabulary II.

Adorn, to, orno, avi, atum, 1.
army, exercitus, ūs, 4 m.
autumn, auctumnus, 2 m.
bird, āvis, is, 3 c.
book, liber, bri, 2 m.
both—and, et—et.
bring-in, to, introduco, xi, ctum, 3.
build, to (a house), aedifico, avi, atum, 1; *(a nest)*, pōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3.
Caesar, Caesar, āris, 3 m.
colonist, colōnus, 2 m.
cross, to, transēo, ii, itum, ire, 4.
despot, tyrannus, 2 m.
enemy, hostis, is, 3 m.
exhort, to, hortor, atus sum, 1 dep.
expel, to, ējicio, jēci, jectum, 3.
farmer, agrīcōla, 1 m.
field, āger, agri, 2 m.
follow, to, sēquor, sēcūsus sum, dep.
found, to, condo, didi, dītum, 3.
hand, mānus, ūs, 4 f.
hostage, obses, idis, 3 m.

house, dŭmus, ūs, *f*.
king, rex, rēgis, 3 *m*.
letter, ēpistōla, 1 *f*.
lose, to, amitto, mīsi, missum, 3.
man, homo, īnis, 3 *m*.
neither—nor, nec—nec.
nest, nidus, 2 *m*.
priest, sacerdos, ōtis, 3 *m*.
queen, rēgina, 1 *f*.
raise, to, tollo, sustuli, sublatum,
 tollēre, 3 *irreg*.
Remus, Rēmus, 2 *m*.
restore, to, reddo, dīdi, dītum, 3.
retake, to, rēcīpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
river, flumen, īnis, 3 *n*.
Romans, Rōmāni, orum, 2 *m. pl*.
Rome, Rōma, 1 *f*.
Romulus, Rōmūlus, 2 *m*.
rose, rōsa, 1 *f*.
rout, to, fūgo, avi, atum, 1.
Sabines, Sābini, orum, 2 *m. pl*.
scatter, to, spargo, si, sum, 3.
see, to, video, vīdi, vīsum, 2.
send, to, mitto, mīsi, missum, 3.
strike-down, to, caedo, cēcīdi,
 caesum, 3.
subdue, to, subīgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
summer, aestas, ātis, 3 *f*.
take-care-of, to, tueor, itus sum,
 2 *dep*.
Tarentum, Tarentum, 2 *n*.
Tarquinius Priscus, Tarquinius
 Priscus, 2 *m*.
temple, templum, 2 *n*.
till, to, cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3.
town, oppidum, 2 *n*.
victim, hostia, 1 *f*.
wife, uxor, ōris, 3 *f*.

Vocabulary III.

All, omnis, *e*.
apple, pōmum, 2 *n*.
bad, mālus, *a*, um.
beat, to, verbēro, avi, atum, 1.
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrum.
blind, caecus, *a*, um.
brave, fortis, *e*.
camp, castra, orum, 2 *n. pl*.
citizen, cīvis, is, 3 *m*.
city, urbs, is, 3 *f*.

civil, cīvilis, *e*.
come, to, vēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
consul, consul, is, 3 *m*.
Crassus, Crassus, 2 *m*.
daughter, filia, 1 *f*.
deaf, surdus, *a*, um.
diligent, dilligens, ntis.
dumb, mutus, *a*, um.
fortify, to, mūnio, ivi, itum, 4.
god, dēus, 2 *m*.
good, bōnus, *a*, um.
grey, cānus, *a*, um.
hair, cāpillus, 2 *m*.
have, to, hābeo, ui, itum, 2.
hear, to, audio, ivi, itum, 4.
idle, ignāvus, *a*, um.
labour, lābor, ōris, 3 *m*.
love, to, āmo, avi, atum, 1.
many, multus, *a*, um.
merchant, mercātor, ōris, 3 *m*.
my, meus, *a*, um.
new, nōvus, *a*, um.
no, nullus, *a*, um.
not, non.
Numa, Numa, 1 *m*.
overcome, to, vinco, vīci, victum, 3.
plant, to, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.
receive, to, accīpio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
repair, to, reficō, fēcī, fectum, 3.
set-out, to, prōficiscor, prōfectus
 sum, 3 *dep*.
shattered, quassus, *a*, um.
ship, nāvis, is, 3 *f*.
son, filius, 2 *m*.
song, carmen, īnis, 3 *n*.
speak, to, lōquor, lōcūtus sum, 3 *dep*.
sweet, dulcis, *e*.
take, to, cāpio, cēpi, captum, 3.
this, hic, haec, hoc.
three, trēs, trēs, tria.
two, duo, duae, duo.
undertake, to, suscīpio, cēpi, cep-
 tum, 3.
wage, to, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.
war, bellum, 2 *n*.
worship, to, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3.

Vocabulary IV.

Alter, to, mūto, avi, atum, 1.
bridge, pons, ntis, 3 *m*.

burn, to (set fire to), incendo, di, sum, 3.
Cicero, Cicero, ōnis, 3 m.
create, to, crēo, avi, atum, 1.
do, to, faciō, fēci, factum, 3.
gate, porta, 1 f.
Gaul, Gallia, 1 f.
gift, dōnum, 2 n.
govern, to, gubernō, avi, atum, 1.
grieve, to, dōleo, ui, itum, 2.
present, to be, adsum, fui, esse.
punish, to, pūnio, ivi, itum, 4.
rebuild, to, restitūo, ui, ūtum, 3.
return, to (give back), reddo, didi, ditum, 3.
say, to, dīco, xi, ctum, 3.
seek, to, quaero, sivi, situm, 3.
sell, to, vendo, didi, ditum, 3.
shut, to, claudio, si, sum, 3.
slave, servus, 2 m.
span, to, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.
suffer, to, pātior, passus sum, 3 dep.
who, qui, quae, quod.
world, mundus, 2 m.
wound, to, vulnero, avi, atum, 1.
yesterday, hērī.

Vocabulary V.

Alexander, Alexander, dri, 2 m.
Amulius, Amulius, 2 m.
Artemisia, Artemisia, 1 f.
as, ut.
cat, fēlis, is, 3 f.
Clitus, Clitus, 2 m.
commonwealth, rēspública, gen. rēpublicae, f.
conqueror, victor, ōris, 3 m.
dear, cārus, a, um.
defend, to, defendo, di, sum, 3.
deity, dēus.
dog, cānis, 3 m.
Egyptians, Aegyptii, orum, 2 m. pl.
excellent, summus, a, um.
father, pāter, tris, 3 m.
fortified, mūnitus, a, um.
friend, āmicus, 2 m.
general, dux, cis, 3 m.; impērātor, ōris, 3 m.
great, magnus, a, um.

Hannibal, Hannībal, is, 3 m.
imitate, to, imitor, atus sum, 1 dep.
just, justus, a, um.
Lampsacus, Lampsācus, 2 m.
leader, dux, cis, 3 m.
Lollius, Lollius, 2 m.
Lucius Murena, Lucius Murēna, gen. Lucii Murenæ.
Lucius Sulla, Lucius Sulla, gen. Lucii Sullae.
Lysander, Lysander, dri, 2 m.
man, vir, 2 m.
Manlius, Manlius, 2 m.
Mausolus, Mausolus, 2 m.
Miltiades, Miltiades, is, 3 m.
Numitor, Nūmītōr, ōris, 3 m.
orator, ōrātor, ōris, 3 m.
peace, pax, pācis, 3 f.
Persians, Persae, arum, 1 m. pl.
Procas, Prōcas, ac, 1 m.
renowned, clarus, a, um.
Roman, Romanus, a, um.
senate, senatus, ūs, 4 m.
slay, to, occido, di, sum, 3.
Spartan, Spartānus, a, um.
sue-for, to, peto, ivi, itum, 3.
summon, to, convōco, avi, atum, 1.
though, quamvis.
Troy, Trōja, 1 f.
wife, conjux, gis, 3 f.
young-man, ādōlescens, ntis, 3 m.

Vocabulary VI.

Always, semper.
anger, ira, 1 f.
better, mēlior, ius.
Britain, Britannia, 1 f.
buy, to, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.
certain, certus, a, um.
country, native-land, pātria, 1 f.
custom, consuetudo, inis, 3 f.
death, mors, tis, 3 f.
eat, to, ēdo, ēdi, esum, 3.
economy, parsimōnia, 1 f.
except, nisl.
formerly, ante.
fortunate, fēlix, icis.
girl, puella, 1 f.
honourable, hōnestus, a, um.

hoped-for, spēratūs, a, um.
horse, ēquus, 2 m.
if, si.
island, insula, 1 f.
long-continued, longus, a, um.
madness, furor, ōris, 3 m.
nature, nātūra, 1 f.
nothing, nīhl, indecl. n.
now, nunc.
pain, dōlor, ōris, 3 m.
revenue, vectīgal, ālis, 3 n.
sad, tristis, e.
second, alter, ēra, ērum.
severe, grāvis, e.
short, brēvis, e.
sister, sūror, ōris, 3 f.
slight, lēvis, e.
than, quam.
that, ille, a, ud.
thy (your), tuus, a, um.
uncertain, incertus, a, um.
unfortunate, infēlix, icis.
victory, victōria, 1 f.

Vocabulary VII

All-at-once, repente.
anxious, to be, cūpio, ivi and ii, itum, 3.
appointed, to be, dicor, dictus sum, 3 pass.
Aristides, Aristīdes, is, 3 m.
base, turpis, e.
because, quia.
become, to, fio, factus sum, fieri, 3 irreg. (used as pass. of facio).
born, to be, nascor, natus sum, 3 dep.
by-chance, cāsu (abl. of cāsus, ūs, 4 m., used adverbially).
call, to, dico, xi, ctum, 3; vōco, avi, atum, 1.
can, possum, pōtui, posse, irreg.
considered, to be, hābeor, hābītus sum, 2 pass.
creator, crēator, ōris, 3 m.
declare, to, declāro, avi, atum, 1.
desire, to, cūpio, ivi and ii, itum, 3.
dictator, dictator, ōris, 3 m.
dream, somnium, 2 n.
elegant, ēlēgans, ntis.

entire, intēger, gra, grum.
esteemed, to be, hābeor, hābītus sum, 2 pass.
first, primus, a, um.
fortification, mūnitio, ōnis, 3 f.
indeed, quidem.
its-own, suus, a, um.
learned, doctus, a, um.
lion, leo, ōnis, 3 m.
made, to be, fio, factus sum, fieri.
misfortune, cālāmītas, atis, 3 f.
named, to be, appellor, atus sum, 1 pass.
no-one, nēmo, Inis, 3 c.
philosopher, phīlōsōphus, 2 m.
philosophy, phīlōsōphia, 1 f.
poet, poēta, 1 m.
poor, pauper, is.
quadruped, quadrūpes, pēdis, 3 c.
remain, to, māneo, mansi, mansum, 2.
reward, mercēs, ēdis, 3 f.
rich, dīves, Itis.
seem, to, videor, vīsus sum, 2 dep.
skilful, pēritus, a, um.
Socrates, Sōcrātes, is, 3 m.
Sulla, Sullā, 1 m.
true, vērus, a, um.
turn-out, to, ēvādo, si, sum, 3.
ultimately, postremō.
wise, sāpiens, ntis.
wish, to, vōlo, vōlui, velle.

Vocabulary VIII

About, (adv.) ferme.
Alcibiades, Alcībīādes, is, 3 m.
all, totus, a, um.
already, jam.
Appius, Appius, 2 m.
at-the-age-of, natus (masc.), nata (fem.) with acc.
bear, ursus, 2 m.
besiege, to, obsīdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
day, diēs, ēi, 5 m.
die, to, mōrior, mortuus sum, mori, 3 dep.
Dionysius, Diōnysius, 2 m.
dream, to, somnio, avi, atum, 1.
eight, octo.
eighty, octoginta.

few, pauci, ae, a (*plur.*).
forty, quadraginta.
government, dominatus, ūs, 4 m.
hour, hora, 1 f.
insect, bestiola, 1 f.
live, to, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.
matron, mātērōna, 1 f.
month, mensis, is, 3 m.
mourn, to, lugeo, luxi, 2.
night, nox, noctis, 3 f.
ninety, nonaginta.
old, natus (masc.), nata (fem.)
 with acc.
one, unus, a, um.
part, pars, partis, 3 f.
Plato, Plato, ōnis, 3 m.
put-to-death, to, interficio, feci,
 fectum, 3.
reign, to, regno, avi, atum, 1.
seize, to, occupo, avi, atum, 1.
seven, septem.
seventy, septuaginta.
sick, aeger, gra, grum.
six, sex.
sleep, to, dormio, ivi, itum, 4.
some, quidam, quaedam, quod-
 dam.
Syracusans, Sŷrācūsāni, orum, 2
 m. pl.
ten, decem.
thirty, triginta.
thirty-eight, duodequadraginta.
twenty, viginti.
tyrant, tyrannus, 2 m.
vain, in, frustra.
whole, totus, a, um.
winter, hiems, is, 3 f.
year, annus, 2 m.

Vocabulary IX.

Africa, Africa, 1 f.
Athens, Athēnae, arum, 1 f. pl.
Babylon, Bābŷlōn, ōnis, 3 f.
broad, lātus, a, um.
column, cōlūma, 1 f.
deep, altus, a, um.
distance, to be at a, absum, abfui,
 abesse.
ditch, fossa, 1 f.
five, quinque.

foot, pēs, pēdia, 3 m.
four, quattuor.
from, a or ab (with abl.).
garden, hortus, 2 m.
Gauls, Galli, orum, 2 m. pl.
Helvetii, Helvētīi, orum, 2 m. pl.
high, altus, a, um.
ice, glācies, ēi, 5 f.
inch, digitus, 2 m.
Italy, Italia, 1 f.
long, longus, a, um.
Marathon, Mārāthon, ōnis, 3 f.
march, to, progredior, gressus sum,
 3 dep.
mile, mille passūs (lit. a thousand
 paces; passus, ūs, 4 m., a pace):
 in plur. millia passuum (lit.
 thousands of paces).
mound, agger, eris, 3 m.
nightingale, lusciniā, 1 f.
one-hundred, centum.
our, noster, tra, trum.
pitch (a camp), to, pōno, pōsui,
 pōsitum, 3.
plain, campus, 2 m.
run (a ditch), to, perduco, xi,
 ctum, 3.
Sardinia, Sardinia, 1 f.
six-hundred, sexcenti, ae, a.
sixteen, sedecim.
spear, hasta, 1 f.
ten (each), dēni, ae, a.
territories, fines, ium, 3 m. pl.
thick, crassus, a, um.
three-hundred, trecenti, ae, a.
throw-up (a mound), to, exstruo
 xi, ctum, 3.
tower, turris, is, 3 f.
two-hundred, ducenti, ae, a.
two-hundred (each), duceni, ae, a.
wall, murus, 2 m.

Vocabulary X.

Aedui, Aedui, orum, 2 m. pl.
ambassador, lēgātus, 2 m.
ask-for, to, rōgo, avi, atum, 1.
beg, to, posco, pōposci, 3; rōgo,
 avi, atum, 1.
best, optīmus, a, um.
conceal, to, cēlo, avi, atum, 1.

corn, frumentum, 2 n.
demand, to, flāgīto, avi, atum, 1;
 posco, poposci, 3.
discourse, sermo, ōnis, 3 m.
elements, elementa, orum, 2 n. pl.
experience, usus, ūs, 4 m.
inform, to, doceo, ui, ctum, 2.
Jugurtha, Jugurtha, 1 m.
keep-from (conceal), to, cēlo, avi,
 atum, 1.
money, pecunia, 1 f.
music, musica, 1 f.
never, nunquam.
opinion, sententia, 1 f.
sum-of-money, pecunia, 1 f.
Titus Ampius, Titus Ampius, 2 m.
tribune, tribūnus, 2 m.
why? cur?

Vocabulary XI.

Appius Claudius, Appius Claudius,
 2 m.
appoint (in writing), to, scribo,
 psi, ptum, 3.
Aristotle, Aristōtēles, ia, 3 m.
asylum, asylum, 2 n.
Athenians, Athenienses, ium, 3
 m. pl.
Attalus, Attālus, 2 m.
avarice, avaritia, 1 f.
call, to, appello, avi, atum, 1.
Cato, Cato, ōnis, 3 m.
choose, to, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3;
 eligo, legi, lectum, 3.
Clodius, Clōdīus, 2 m.
colleague, collēga, 1 m.
consider, to, arbitror, atus sum,
 1 dep.
constitute, to, instituo, ui, utum, 3.
count, deem, to, puto, avi, atum, 1.
coward, timidus (homo under-
 stood), 2 m.
darling, dēliciae, arum, 1 f. pl.
deem, to, puto, avi, atum, 1.
elect, to, creō, avi, atum, 1.
emperor, impērator, ōris, 3 m.
Fortune, Fortūna, 1 f.
freedman, libertinus, 2 m.
goddess, dea, 1 f.
grove, lucus, 2 m.

heir, hēres, ēdis, 3 m.
human, hūmānus, a, um.
inhabitant, incōla, 1 c.
kingdom, regnum, 2 n.
make, to, fācio, fēci, factum, 3.
mean, sordīdus, a, um.
Octavius, Octavius, 2 m.
people, pōpulus, 2 m.
Pericles, Pericles, ia, 3 m.
plebeians, plebs, plēbis, 3 f. sing.
 (collective).
priestess, sacerdos, ōtis, 3 f.
race, gēnus, genēris, 3 n.
render, to, reddo, didi, dītum, 3.
Rhea Silvia, Rhea Silvia, 1 f.
salute, to, sālūto, avi, atum, 1.
senator, sēnator, ōris, 3 m.
Sophocles, Sōphocles, ia, 3 m.
state, civitas, ātis, 3 f.
style, to, designo, avi, atum, 1.
teacher, praeceptor, ōris, 3 m.
thrifty, parcus, a, um.
tragedy, tragoedia, 1 f.
tried, spectatus, a, um.
universe, mundus, 2 m.
Valerius Flaccus, Valerius Flac-
 cus, 2 m.
Vesta, Vesta, 1 f.
wary, cautus, a, um.
whole, universus, a, um.
writer, scriptor, ōris, 3 m.

Vocabulary XII.

After, post.
against, adversus, contra.
along, secundum.
among, apud.
Ancus Martius, Ancus Martius,
 2 m.
Appian Way, Via Appia, 1 f.
around, circa.
at, apud.
Atticus, Atticus, 2 m.
before, ante.
beneath, infra.
beside, praeter.
between, inter.
beyond, trans.
bury, to, sēpēlio, ivi and ii, sepul-
 tum, 4.

by-far, longe.
Capua, Căpua, 1 f.
change, to, muto, avi, atum, 1.
close-to, juxta.
dwell, to, habito, avi, atum, 1.
famous, clarus, a, um.
fight, to, dimico, avi, atum, 1.
Germans, Germani, orum, 2 m. pl.
guardianship, custodia, 1 f.
in-the-power of, pēnēs.
into, in (with acc.).
Latins, Lātini, orum, 2 m. pl.
lead, to, duco, xi, ctum, 3.
lead-back, to, reduco, xi, ctum, 3.
legion, lēgio, ōnis, 3 f.
march, to, contendo, di, tum, 3.
mind, animus, 2 m.
moon, luna, 1 f.
mortal, mortālis, e.
Mount Jura, Mons Jura, gen.
Montis Jurae.
noble, nōbīlis, e.
none, nēmo, inis, 3 c.
noon, mēridies, ei, 5 m.
on-account-of, ob.
on-this-side-of, cis.
Orgetorix, Orgētorix, ŷgis, 3 m.
Punic, Pūnicus, a, um.
rout, to, prōfligo, avi, atum, 1.
Rhine, Rhēnus, 2 m.
Rhone, Rhōdānus, 2 m.
Rullus, Rullus, 2 m.
run, to, curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3.
sea, mare, is, 3 n.
second, secundus, a, um.
Sempronius Longus, Sempronius Longus, 2 m.
Sequani, Sēquāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
through, per.
to, ad (= 'proceeding to,' after verbs of motion).
towards, versus (put after the word it governs).
Trebia, Trēbia, 1 f.
wood, silva, 1 f.

Vocabulary XIII.

Dance, to, salto, avi, atum, 1.
deny, to, nēgo, avi, atum, 1.
go-out, to, exeo, ii, itum, 4.

himself, se (acc.), sibi (dat.).
his, her, its, suus, a, um.
husbandman, agricola, 1 m.
judge, judex, icis, 3 m.
know, to, scio, ivi, itum, 4.
not-know, to, nescio, ii, itum, 4.
large, magnus, a, um.
mother, māter, tris, 3 f.
play, to, ludo, si, sum, 3.
plough, to, aro, avi, atum, 1.
pupil, discipulus, 2 m.
shine, to, luceo, xi, 2.
sit, to, sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, 2.
sun, sōl, sōlis, 3 m.
who? quis, quae, quid?

Vocabulary XIV.

Corn, sēges, ētis, 3 f.
countless, innumerabilis, e.
declare, to, dico, xi, ctum, 3.
Democritus, Dēmōcritus, 2 m.
evil, mālum, 2 n.
faithful, fidēlis, e.
happy, beātus, a, um.
honest, prōbus, a, um.
ill, aegrōtus, a, um.
life, vita, 1 f.
little, parvus, a, um.
perceive, to, intellēgo, lexi, lectum, 3; sentio, si, sum, 4.
ripe, mātūrus, a, um.
severe, sēvērus, a, um.
Sicily, Sicīlia, 1 f.
snow, nix, nīvis, 3 f.
way, via, 1 f.
white, albus, a, um.

Vocabulary XV.

Foolish, stultus, a, um.
he, she, it, is, ea, id.
justice, justitia, 1 f.
love, to, diligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
often, saepe.
pretend, to, simūlo, avi, atum, 1.
timid, timīdus, a, um.
Tullius, Tullius, 2 m.
understand, to, intellēgo, lexi, lectum, 3.

Vocabulary XVI.

Alps, *Alpes*, *ŭm*, 3 *f. pl.*
announce, to, *nuntio*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
at-hand, to be, *adsum*, *fui*, *esse*.
boast, to, *glorior*, *atus sum*, 1 *dep.*
confess, to, *confiteor*, *feasus sum*,
 2 *dep.*
cross, to, *supero*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
depart, to, *discedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*,
 3.
history, *historia*, 1 *f.*
insane, to be, *furo*, *ui*, 3.
lieutenant-general, *légatus*, 2 *m.*
Livy, *Livius*, 2 *m.*
oration, *oratio*, *ōnia*, 3 *f.*
ready, *pāratus*, *a*, *um*.
relate, to, *narro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
reply, to, *respondeo*, *di*, *sum*, 2.
return, to, *redeo*, *ii*, *ŭtum*, 4.
think, to, *puto*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

Vocabulary XVII.

Answer, to, *respondeo*, *di*, *sum*, 2.
safe, *tutus*, *a*, *um*.

Vocabulary XVIII.

A long time, *diu*.
affair, *rēs*, *rēi*, 5 *f.*
business, *nēgōtium*, 2 *n.*
chastise, to, *castigo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
early, (adv.) *mātūre*.
finish, to, *conficio*, *feci*, *fectum*, 3.
give, to, *do*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*, 1.
hope, to, *spēro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
promise, to, *polliceor*, *pollicitus*
sum, 2 *dep.*
to-morrow, *cras*.

Vocabulary XIX.

Any-one, *quisquam*, *quaequam*,
quidquam (*in negative clauses*).
believe, to, *crēdo*, *credīdi*, *credī-*
tum, 3.
deserter, *perfuga*, 1 *m.*
ever, *unquam*.
sin, to, *pecco*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

Vocabulary XX.

Credible, *crēdibīlis*, *e*.
evident, *manifestus*, *a*, *um*.
fear, to, *timeo*, *ui*, 2.
for-the-sake-of, *causā* (*with gen.*).
manifest, *manifestus*, *a*, *um*.
necessary, *necesse*, *indecl. neut. adj.*
old-age, *senectus*, *utis*, 3 *f.*
plain, *manifestus*, *a*, *um*.
prepare-for, to, *paro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
probable, *vērīsimilis*, *e*.
rule, to, *rēgo*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.
run-away, to, *fūgio*, *fūgi*, *fūgitum*,
 3.
star, *stella*, 1 *f.*
voice, *vox*, *vociis*, 3 *f.*
well-known, it is, *constat*, *impers.*

Vocabulary XXI.

Anticyra, *Anticyra*, 1 *f.*
betake (oneself), to, *confēro*, *con-*
tūli, *collātum*, *conferre*, *irreg.*
bring, to, *duco*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.
bring (a ship), to, *deduco*, *xi*,
ctum, 3.
Brundisium, *Brundisium*, 2 *n.*
but, at.
Canusium, *Canusium*, 2 *n.*
Carthage, *Carthāgo*, *inis*, 3 *f.*
chosen, *delectus*, *a*, *um*.
Corinth, *Corinthus*, 2 *f.*
country (as opposed to town), *rūs*,
rūris, 3 *n.*
cross, to, *trājicio*, *jēci*, *jectum*, 3.
Curius, *Curius*, 2 *m.*
Delos, *Dēlos*, *gen. Deli*, *acc. De-*
lum, 2 *f.*
Delphi, *Delphi*, *orum*, 2 *m. pl.*
Demaratus, *Dēmārātus*, 2 *m.*
Dolabella, *Dōlābella*, 1 *m.*
elephant, *ēlēphantus*, 2 *m.*
Fabius, *Fabius*, 2 *m.*
go-away, to, *abeo*, *ii*, *ŭtum*, 4 *irreg.*
hide, *corium*, 2 *n.*
home (to one's), *domum*, *acc. of*
domus, *ūs*, 4 *f.*
Laodicea, *Lāōdicēa*, 1 *f.*
marine, *classarius*, 2 *m.*

monster, bellua, 1 f.
Narbo, Narbo, ōnis, 3 m.
Pompey, Pompeius, 2 m.
quaestor, quaestor, ōris, 3 m.
Quinctius, Quinctius, 2 m.
return, to, revertor, versus sum, 3 dep.
Rhodes, Rhōdus, 2 f.
sail, to, navigo, avi, atum, 1.
Syracuse, Sýracusae, arum, 1 f. pl.
Tarquinii, Tarquinii, orum, 2 m. pl.
thence, inde.
withdraw, to, concedo, cessi, cessum, 3.

Vocabulary XXII.

Archimedes, Archímēdes, is, 3 m.
Arganthonius, Arganthonius, 2 m.
Arpinum, Arpinum, 2 n.
Cadiz, Gādes, ium, 3 f. pl.
Cadmus, Cadmus, 2 m.
certain, quidam, quaedam, quodam.
Cumae, Cumae, arum, 1 f. pl.
determine, to, statuo, ui, utum, 3.
Diana, Dīana, 1 f.
distinguished, clarus, a, um.
eighteen, duodeviginti.
eloquence, eloquentia, 1 f.
Ephesus, Ephēsus, 2 m.
Gabii, Gabii, orum, 2 m. pl.
Horace, Horatius, 2 m.
lie, to, jaceo, ui, 2.
Macedonians, Mācēdōnes, um, 3 m. pl.
mechanician, mechanicus, 2 m.
more-than, amplius.
Phocaea, Phocaea, 1 f.
remove, to, migro, avi, atum, 1.
rhetoric, rhetorica, 1 f.
splendid, splendidus, a, um.
Tarquinus Superbus, Tarquinius Superbus, 2 m.
tooth, dens, ntis, 3 m.
two-years, biennium, 2 n.
Veii, Veii, orum, 2 m. pl.
Venusia, Venusia, 1 f.
winter, to, hiemo, avi, atum, 1.

Vocabulary XXIII.

Aeschines, Aeschines, is, 3 m.
come, to, pervēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
Corcyra, Corcýra, 1 f.
fodder, pābŭlum, 2 n.
Greek, Graecus, a, um.
import, to, supporto, avi, atum, 1.
Luceria, Lūcēria, 1 f.
Massilia, Massilia, 1 f.
oblige, to, cōgo, cōēgi, coactum, 3.
old-man, sēnex, sēnis, 3 m.
on-foot, pēdibus (abl. plur. of pēs, pēdis, 3 m.).
Pompeians, Pompeiāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
retire, to, cedo, cessi, cessum, 3.
send-for, to, arcesso, ivi, itum, 3.
some-time, aliquamdiu.
Sparta, Sparta, 1 f.
stay, to, commoror, atus sum, 1 dep.
Tarraco, Tarraco, ōnis, 3 f.
Thebans, Thēbāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
Timoleon, Timōleon, ntis, 3 m.
when, quum.

Vocabulary XXIV.

Acquirements, artes, plur. of ars, artis, 3 f.
almost, paene.
Arcadia, Arcādia, 1 f.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, 2 m.
as-it-were, quāsi.
body, corpus, ōris, 3 n.
brave, to, contemno, psi, ptum, 3.
break, to, frango, frēgi, fractum, 3.
brother, frater, tris, 3 m.
Catilina, Cātīlina, 1 m.
common, communis, e.
Croesus, Croesus, 2 m.
decrease, to, decresco, crevi, cretum, 3.
defeat, to, fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3.
destroy, to, dēleo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
ear, auris, is, 3 f.
Egerius, Egerius, 2 m.
forces, cōplae, arum, 1 f. pl.
goat, cāpella, 1 f.
Hector, Hector, ōris, 3 m.

horn, cornu, ūs, 4 n.
immense, immensus, a, um.
Juno, Juno, ōnis, 3 f.
Jupiter, Jupiter, gen. Jovis, dat. Jovi.
lead-forth, to, produco, xi, ctum, 3.
Lydians, Lydi, orum, 2 m. pl.
Pan, Pān, Panis, 3 m.
past, (prep.) praeter (with acc.).
pleasure, vōluptas, ātis, 3 f.
Priam, Priāmus, 2 m.
say, to, trādo, dīdi, dītum, 3.
Scipio, Scipio, ōnis, 3 m.
scout, explorātor, ōris, 3 m.
sword, glādius, 2 m.
time (age), aetas, ātis, 3 f.
Trojan, Trōjānus, a, um.
Vestal, Vestālis, e.
virgin, virgo, Inis, 3 f.
wind, ventus, 2 m.
wisdom, sāpientia, 1 f.

Vocabulary XXV.

Advice, consīlium, 2 n.
any, quivis, gen. cujusvis.
as, quam.
avoid, to, vīto, avi, atum, 1.
badly, mālē.
benevolence, bēnēvōlentia, 1 f.
bravery, fortitūdo, Inis, 3 f.
check, to, sustīneo, tinui, tentum, 2.
Christian, Christianus, 2 m.
condemn, to, damno, avi, atum, 1.
cowardice, ignāvia, 1 f.
desert, to, relinquo, liqui, lictum, 3.
despise, to, contemno, psi, ptum, 3.
educate, to, educo, avi, atum, 1.
elders, majōres natu, irreg. compar. of senex.
err, to, erro, avi, atum, 1.
execute, to, administro, avi, atum, 1.
expense, sumptus, ūs, 4 m.
fear, mētus, ūs, 4 m.
fervour, impētus, ūs, 4 m.
folly, stultitia, 1 f.
fool, stultus, 2 m.
labour, to, lābōro, avi, atum, 1.
law, lex, lēgis, 3 f.
lofty, excelsus, a, um.

narrow, angustus, a, um.
needless, supervacuus, a, um.
point-out, to, monstro, avi, atum, 1.
post, praesidium, 2 n.
prudent, prudens, ntis.
recklessness, tēmēritas, atis, 3 f.
reverence, to, vērēor, vērītus sum, 2 dep.; cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3.
rule, to, impero, avi, atum, 1.
shear, to, tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, 2.
so, tam, Itā.
well, bēnē.
wrong, to, viōlo, avi, atum, 1.

Vocabulary XXVI.

Adore, to, vērēror, atus sum, 1 dep.
allurement, illēcēbra, 1 f.
approbation, approbatio, onis, 3 f.
baseness, turpītudo, Inis, 3 f.
but, sed.
cause, causa, 1 f.
Ceres, Cēres, ēris, 3 f.
companion, cōmēs, Itis, 3 c.
dig-out, to, effodio, fōdi, fossum, 3.
divine, divīnus, a, um.
duty, officiū, 2 n.
effect, effectus, ūs, 4 m.
founder, condītōr, ōris, 3 m.
guardian, custos, ōdis, 3 m.
hearer, audiens, ntis, 3 c.
Helen, Hēlēna, 1 f.
incentive, irritāmentum, 2 n.
incitement, incītāmentum, 2 n.
interpreter, interpres, ētis, 3 c.
knowledge, scientia, 1 f.
light, lux, lucis, 3 f.
love, amor, ōris, 3 m.
mind, mens, ntis, 3 f.
not only—but also, non solum—sed etiam.
ought, I, debeo, ui, Itum, 2.
past, (adj.) praetēritus, a, um.
patience, pātientia, 1 f.
pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
prudence, prudentia, 1 f.
punishment, supplicium, 2 n.
recollection, memoria, 1 f.
remedy, medicīna, 1 f.
riches, ōpes, um, 3 f. pl.

sense, sensus, ūs, 4 m.
servant, minister, tri, 2 m.
so-many, tot, indecl.
source, effectrix, ūis, 3 f. (*fem.*
form of effector).
speech, oratio, ōnis, 3 f.
sweet, suāvis, e.
warning, admonitio, ōnis, 3 f.
wheat, frumentum, 2 n.

Vocabulary XXVII.

Accost, to, adeo, ii, Itum, 4.
admirable, admirābilis, e.
approved, spectatus, a, um.
birth (high birth), nobilitas, ātis, 3 f.
bring, to, fēro, tūli, lātum, ferre, irreg.
Capitol, Cāpitolium, 2 n.
cloud, nubes, is, 3 f.
colour, cōlor, ōris, 3 m.
constancy, constantia, 1 f.
countenance, vultus, ūs, 4 m.
courage, fortitūdo, ūis, 3 f.
cow, bōs, būvis, 3 f.
crown, cōrōna, 1 f.
disposition, indōles, is, 3 f.
fertility, fertilitas, atis, 3 f.
fidelity, fides, ēi, 5 f.
fire, ignis, 3 m.; *fiery*, igneus, a, um.
golden, aureus, a, um.
high-bred, ingēnuus, a, um.
immense, ingens, ntis.
judgment, consilium, 2 n.
Lucius Torquatus, Lucius Torquātus, 2 m.
marvellous, mirus, a, um.
modesty, pudor, ōris, 3 m.
Mucius, Mucius, 2 m.
old-fashioned, priscus, a, um.
opposite, diversus, a, um.
party, pars, partis, 3 f.
royal, regius, a, um.
serpent, serpens, ntis, 3 f.
severity, severitas, ātis, 3 f.
singular, singularis, e.
size, magnitūdo, ūis, 3 f.
slumber, somnus, 2 m.
sometimes, aliquando.

PART III.

talent, ingēnium, 2 n.
truly, vērē.
valour, virtus, ūtis, 3 f.
weight, pondus, ūris, 3 n.
well-known, cognitus, a, um.
young-man, juvenis, 3 m.

Vocabulary XXVIII.

Act, to, ago, egi, actum, 3.
authority, auctoritas, ātis, 3 f.
avaricious, āvārus, a, um.
considerately, considerāte.
even, etiam.
hold, to, habeo, ui, Itum, 2.
impious, impius, a, um.
others, ceteri, ae, a.
perhaps, fortasse.
pleasure-ground, horti, orum, 2 m. pl.
prudently, prudenter.
Pythius, Pŷthius, 2 m.
think, to, cogito, avi, atum, 1.
unlearned, indoctus, a, um.
value, to, aestimo, avi, atum, 1.
want, to, vōlo, vōlui, velle, irreg.
worthless, prāvus, a, um.

Vocabulary XXIX.

Agree, to, consentio, si, sum, 4.
agreeable, grātus, a, um.
ancient, pristinus, a, um.
animal, animal, ālis, 3 n.
Belgae, Belgae, arum, 1 m. pl.
building, aedificium, 2 n.
cattle, pēcus, ōris, 3 n.
cheap, vilis, e.
connection, societas, atis, 3 f.
contented, contentus, a, um.
drink, to, pōto, avi, atum, 1.
enough, sātis.
form, figūra, 1 f.
friendship, amicitia, 1 f.
infinite, infinitus, a, um.
last, ultimus, a, um.
learn-by-heart, to, edisco, didici, 3.
name, nōmen, ūis, 3 n.
number, multitūdo, ūis, 3 f.; nūmerus, 2 m.

numerous, crēber, bra, brum.
 or, aut.
Paullus Aemilius, *Paullus Aemilius*, 2 m.
peck, mōdius, 2 m.
preserve, to, conservo, avi, atum, 1.
price, prētium, 2 n.
require, to, expeto, ivi and ii, itum, 3.
reward, praemium, 2 n.
ring, anulū, 2 m.
Samnites, Samnites, ium, 3 m. pl.
seventh, septīmus, a, um.
slay, to, caedo, cēdi, caesum, 3.
something, aliquid.
splendid, magnificus, a, um;
compar. magnificentior, ius;
superl. magnificentissimus, a, um.
strength, rōbur, ōris, 3 n.
triumph, triumphus, 2 m.
very-little, a, paullulum (with gen.).
wine, vinum, 2 n.

Vocabulary XXX.

Allowed, it is, licet, uit and itum est, 2 impers.
bid, to, jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2.
command, mandātum, 2 n.
danger, pēriculum, 2 n.
dead, mortuus, a, um.
discern, to, cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.
dissension, dissensio, ōnis, 3 f.
Epicurus, Epicurus, 2 m.
fault, vitium, 2 n.
forget, to, obliviscor, oblitus sum, 3 dep.
injury, injūria, 1 f.
living, vīvus, a, um.
Mauretania, Mauretānia, 1 f.
misfortune, mālum, 2 n.
modesty, vērēcundia, 1 f.
nor, nec, neque.
one's-own, suus, a, um.
pity, to, misereor, itus sum, 2 dep.
place, lōcus, 2 m.
plunder, praeda, 1 f.
remember, to, memini, isse, verb defect.

servant, servus, 2 m.
son-in-law, gēner, ōri, 2 m.
weakness, infirmitas, ātis, 3 f.
yet, tamen.

Vocabulary XXXI.

Anger, irācundia, 1 f.
carelessness, negligentia, 1 f.
deed, factum, 2 n.
design, consilium, 2 n.
fault, culpa, 1 f.
industry, industria, 1 f.
infamy, infamia, 1 f.
insolence, insolentia, 1 f.
manner, mōs, mōris, 3 m.
neither—nor, neque—neque.
poverty, paupertas, ātis, 3 f.
repents, it, paenitet, uit, 2 impers.
shames, it, pudet, uit and itum est, 2 impers.
sin, peccatum, 2 n.
slloth, ignavia, 1 f.
sllothful, ignavus, a, um.
some-day-or-other, aliquando.
tires, it, taedet, (pertaesum est), taedēre, 2 impers.
vexes, it, piget, uit and itum est, 2 impers.
wearies, it, taedet, 2 impers.
wish, voluntas, ātis, 3 f.

Vocabulary XXXII.

Absent, absens, ntis.
accuse, to, accuso, avi, atum, 1.
acquit, to, absolvo, solvi, solutum, 3.
adverse, adversus, a, um.
Apollo, Apollo, īnis, 3 m.
Anaxagoras, Anaxagoras, a, 1 m.
bribery, ambitus, ūs, 4 m.
Caelius, Caelius, 2 m.
Catilinarian, Catilinariū, a, um.
complicity, societas, ātis, 3 f.
conspiracy, conjuratio, ōnis, 3 f.
convict, to, convinco, vīci, victum, 3.
crime, crīmen, īnis, 3 n.
excessive, nīmius, a, um.

extortion, rēpētundae, arum, 1 f. pl.
faction, factio, ōnis, 3 f.

fine, multa, 1 f.

greed, āvāritia, 1 f.

head, cāpūt, Itis, 3 n.

impeach, to, postūlo, avi, atum, 1.

impiety, hōmipietas, ātis, 3 f.

Iphicrates, Iphicrātes, is, 3 m.

leading-men, principes, um, 3 m.
 pl.

lose, to, perdo, dīdi, dītum, 3.

Lucilius, Lucilius, 2 m.

Lysanias, Lysanias, ae, 1 m.

matricide, mātricidīum, 2 n.

murder, hōmīcidīum, 2 n.

Orestes, Orestes, is, 3 m.

peculation, peculātus, ūs, 4 m.

property, bōna, orum, 2 n. pl.

Publius Sulla, Publius Sulla, gen.

Publii Sullae.

theft, furtum, 2 n.

Themistocles, Themistocles, is,
 3 m.

Timotheus, Timotheus, 2 m.

treachery, prōdītio, ōnis, 3 f.

treason, prōdītio, ōnis, 3 f.

Verrēs, Verrēs, is, 3 m.

wrong, to, laedo, si, sum, 3.

ignorant, ignārus, a, um; nescius,
 a, um.

laugh-at, to, rīdeo, si, sum, 2.

lavish, profusus, a, um.

lie, mendācium, 2 n.

mindful, mēmōr, ōris.

Mummius, Mummius, 2 m.

naval, nāvālis, e.

novelty, nōvitas, ātis, 3 f.

partaker, particeps, cīpis, 3 c.

patient, pātiens, ntis.

power, impērium, 2 n.

praise, laus, dis, 3 f.

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, 2 m.

Pythagoras, Pythagoras, ae, 1 m.

reason, rātio, ōnis, 3 f.

rectitude, rectum, 2 n.

rumour, fama, 1 f.

skilled, perītus, a, um.

Tanquil, Tānāquil, ilis, 3 f.

thought, cogitatio, onis, 3 f.

truth, vērītas, ātis, 3 f.

unmindful, immēmōr, ōris.

unskilled, imperītus, a, um;
 rudis, e.

want-of-rest, vīgīlia, 1 f.

what-belongs-to-others, āliēnus, a,
 um.

Vocabulary XXXIII.

Augury, augurium, 2 n.

beast, bestia, 1 f.

capable-of-enduring, pātiens, ntis.

cold, algor, ōris, 3 m.

conscious, conscius, a, um.

contention, contentio, onis, 3 f.

covetous, appētens, ntis.

desirous, appētens, ntis.

destitute, expers, rtis.

eager, stūdiōsus, a, um.

fate, fātum, 2 n.

favour, beneficium, 2 n.

Flaccus, Flaccus, 2 m.

Flaminius, Flaminius, 2 m.

fond, cūpidus, a, um.

forgetful, oblitus, a, um.

glory, glōria, 1 f.

greedy, āvīdus, a, um.

hate, to, ōdi, isse, verb defect.

hunger, inēdia, 1 f.

Vocabulary XXXIV.

Anicia, Anicia, 1 f.

Antonius, Antonius, 2 m.

Augustus, Augustus, 2 m.

Blaesus, Blaesus, 2 m.

Caecilia, Caecilia, 1 f.

Campanian, Campānus, a, um.

covetous, āvārus, a, um.

cultivate, to, cōlo, cōlui, cultum,
 3.

discharge-from-service, missio, ōnis,
 3 f.

farm, praedium, 2 n.

find-leisure, to, vāco, avi, atum, 1.

Hiero, Hīēro, ōnis, 3 m.

Lycurgus, Lycurgus, 2 m.

make-populous, to, frequento, avi,
 atum, 1.

Marcus Servius, Marcus Servius,
 2 m.

marry, to, nubo, psi, ptum, 3.

Megarians, Megarenses, Yum,
3 m. pl.

Metellus, Metellus, 2 m.

mouse, mūs, mūris, 3 m.

Octavia, Octavia, 1 f.

owner, dominus, 2 m.

Pisistratus, Pisistratus, 2 m.

procure, to, paro, avi, atum, 1.

Publius Sulpicius, Publius Sulpi-
cius, 2 m.

relative, propinquus, 2 m.

school, schōla, 1 f.

seek, to, peto, ivi and ii, itum, 3.

Sextus Roscius, Sextus Roscius,
2 m.

snakes, insidiae, arum, 1 f. pl.

Solon, Solon, ōnis, 3 m.

Spartans, Spartāni, orum, 2 m. pl.

Venus, Vēnus, ēris, 3 f.

Vulcan, Vulcānus, 2 m.

wolf, lupus, 2 m.

Vocabulary XXXV.

Age, aetas, ātis, 3 f.

allow, to, permitto, mīsi, missum,
3.

award, to, trībuo, ui, utum, 3.

command, impērium, 2 n.

commit, to, committo, mīsi, mis-
sum, 3.

counsel, consīlium, 2 n.

Darius, Darius, 2 m.

different, dispar, pāris.

emperor, princeps, cīpis, 3 m.

entrust, to, mando, avi, atum, 1.

eye, ōculus, 2 m.

foot (soldier), pēdēs, itis, 3 m.

four (each), quaterni, ae, a.

happen, to, accido, cīdi, 3.

honour, hōnos, ōris, 3 m.

horse (soldier), ēquēs, itis, 3 m.

inactive, ignavus, a, um.

lately, nuper.

lieutenant, lēgātus, 2 m.

little-boy, parvūlus, 2 m.

Memnon, Memnon, ōnis, 3 m.

motion, mōtus, ūs, 4 m.

veracious, perniciosus, a, um.

harnabazus, Pharnabāzus, 2 m.

report, to, nuntio, avi, atum, 1.

safety, sālūs, ūtis, 3 f.

same, idem, eadem, Idem.

Sempronius, Sempronius, 2 m.

sesterce, sestertius, 2 m.

show, to, monstro, avi, atum, 1.

sufficient, sātīs, indecl.

surrender, to, trādo, dīdi, dītum,
3.

tell, to, dico, xi, ctum, 3.

too-much, nīmīs, indecl.

truth, vērūm, 2 n.

vigilant, vīgilans, ntis.

youth, adolescentia, 1 f.

Vocabulary XXXVI.

Ancestors, majōres, um, 3 m. pl.

angry, to be, irāscor, irātus sum,
3 dep.

anxious, to be, stūdeo, ui, 2.

consulship, consulātus, ūs, 4 m.

cunning, astus, ūs, 4 m.

cure, to, mēdeor, 2 dep.

disease, morbus, 2 m.

doctor, mēdicus, 2 m.

envy, to, invīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2.

favour, to, fāveo, fāvi, fautum, 2.

govern, to, impēro, avi, atum, 1.

hurt, to, nōceo, ui, itum, 2.

indulge, to, indulgeo, si, tum, 2.

obey, to, pāreo, ui, itum, 2.

pardon, to, ignosco, nōvi, nōtum,
3.

please, to, plāceo, ui, itum, 2.

prevail-on, to, persuadeo, si, sum,
2.

Publius Servilius, Publius Ser-
vilius, 2 m.

recently, nuper.

revolution, novae res, gen. nova-
rum rerum, pl.

slave-of, to be the, servio, ivi and
ii, itum, 4.

spare, to, parco, peperi, parsum, 3.

suppliant, supplex, icis, 3 c.

very-much, valde.

victor, victor, ōris, 3 m.

wicked, imprōbus, a, um; prāvus,
a, um.

Vocabulary XXXVII.

Absent, to be, absum, fui, esse.
Aruns, Aruns, ntis, 3 m.
battle, proelium, 2 n.
cavalry, equites, um, 3 m. pl.
citadel, arx, arcis, 3 f.
command, to, praesum, fui, esse.
do-good-to, to, prosum, fui, esse.
fail, to, desum, fui, esse.
husband, vir, 2 m.
indolence, segnitiēs, ēi, 5 f.
injure, to, obsum, fui, esse.
magistrate, māgistrātus, ūs, 4 m.
most-of-all, plurimum.
opportunity, occasio, ōnia, 3 f.
Pelopidas, Pelōpidas, ae, 1 m.
succour, to, adsum, fui, esse.
survive, to, supersum, fui, esse.
take-part-in, to, intersum, fui, esse.
take-the-lead-in, to, praesum, fui, esse.
Tarpeia, Tarpēia, 1 f.
very-many, permulti, ae, a.
wanting, to be, desum, fui, esse.

Vocabulary XXXVIII.

Acceptable, acceptus, a, um.
accustomed, to be, sōleo, Itus sum, 2.
contemporary, aequālis, e.
cruelty, crūdēlitas, ātis, 3 f.
Deiotarus, Deiōtārus, 2 m.
difficult, difficilis, e.
disagreeable, ingrātus, a, um.
easy, facilis, e.
especially, maxime.
friendly, amicus, a, um.
hostile, inimicus, a, um.
like, similis, e.
multitude, multītūdo, inis, 3 f.
near, prōpinquus, a, um; prōpē, compar. prōpior, ius, superl. proximus, a, um.
plebs, plebs, is, 3 f.
propitious, propitius, a, um.
serviceable, idōneus, a, um.
sleep, somnus, 2 m.
so-as, tam—quam.

soil, solum, 2 n.
unlike, dissimilis, e.
useful, utilis, e.

Vocabulary XXXIX.

Also, quoque.
anxiety, cura, 1 f.
assistance, auxilium, 2 n.
associate, socius, 2 m.
calamity, cālāmītas, ātis, 3 f.
care, cura, 1 f.
cavalry, equitātus, ūs, 4 m.
Claudia, Clāudia, 1 f.
confidence, fidūcia, 1 f.
defence, defensio, onis, 3 f.
destruction, exītiūm, 2 n.
disgrace, dēdēcua, ōris, 3 n.; probrum, 2 n.
disgraceful, turpis, e.
except, praeter, prep. (with acc.).
Fabia, Fābia, 1 f.
gain, quaestus, ūs, 4 m.
guard, praesidium, 2 n.
hatred, odium, 2 n.
impute, to, verito, ti, sum, 3.
Lacedaemonians, Lācēdaemōnii, orum, 2 m. pl.
laughing-stock, risus, ūs, 4 m.
leave, to, relinquo, liqui, lictum, 3.
machine, māchina, 1 f.
Pausanias, Pausanias, ae, 1 m.
Plataeans, Plataeenses, ium, 3 m. pl.
present, dōnum, 2 n.
reproach, opprobrium, 2 n.
rural, rusticus, a, um.
sailor, nauta, 1 m.
service, usus, ūs, 4 m.
spacious, amplus, a, um.
state-of-one's-health, vālētūdo, inis, 3 f.
too-much, nimius, a, um.
usefulness, ūtilitas, ātis, 3 f.
wont-to-be, sōleo, Itus sum, 2.

Vocabulary XL.

Alexandria, Alexandriā, 1 f.
all, cunctus, a, um.

amuse, to, delecto, avi, atum, 1.
biting, morsus, ūs, 4 m.
blood, sanguis, īnis, 3 m.
Britons, Britanni, orum, 2 m. pl.
Brutus, Brutus, 2 m.
bull, taurus, 2 m.
clothe, to, vestio, ivi, itum, 4.
constant, assīdūus, a, um.
defend, to, tutor, atus sum, 1 dep.
Demosthenes, Demosthenes, is, 3 m.
diligence, diligentia, 1 f.
earth, terra, 1 f.
Egypt, Aegyptus, 2 f.
fire, ignis, 3 m.; *with fire and sword*, igni ferroque.
flower, flōs, flōris, 3 m.
fruits (of the earth), fruges, um, 3 f. pl.
herb, herba, 1 f.
illumine, to, illustro, avi, atum, 1.
impediment, impēdimentum, 2 n.
inform, to, certiorē facere; *informed, to be*, certior fieri.
iron (adj.), ferreus, a, um.
lay-waste, to, vasto, avi, atum, 1.
overcome, to, supero, avi, atum, 1.
pierce, to, confōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3.
pine, pīnus, ūs, 4 f.
rampart, vallum, 2 n.
sword, ferrum, 2 n. (lit. *iron*).
thief, fūr, fūris, 3 m.
toss, to, āgito, avi, atum, 1.
tusk, dens, ntis, 3 m. (lit. *tooth*).
use, usus, ūs, 4 m.
wealthy, ōpulentus, a, um.
weapon, tēlum, 2 n.
wear-away, to, cōsumo, psi, ptum, 3.
wild-boar, aper, apri, 2 m.
wound, vulnus, ēris, 3 n.

Vocabulary XLI

Antiochus, Antiōchus, 2 m.
Antony, Antōnius, 2 m.
as-far-as, tēnis (prep. *with abl.*).
banish, to, pello, pēpāli, pulsum, 3.
carry, to, porto, avi, atum, 1.
city, dīcōrus, a, um.

command, to, jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2 (with *infin.*).
feel, to, sentio, si, sum, 4.
for, on behalf of, pro (with *abl.*).
friendship, amicitia, 1 f.
from, out of, ex; *away from*, ab.
hasten, to, mātūro, avi, atum, 1.
heart, cor, cordis, 3 n.
in, in (with abl.); *into, in (with acc.)*.
in sight of, coram (with *abl.*).
Macedonia, Mācēdōnia, 1 f.
midst-of-battle, āciēs, ei, 5 f.
on, concerning, de (with *abl.*).
out-of, ex (with *abl.*).
shed, to, prōfundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3.
Taurus, Taurus, 2 m.
tear, lācrīma, 1 f.
winter-quarters, hiberna, orum, 2 n. pl.
with, cum (with *abl.*).
without, sinē (with *abl.*).

Vocabulary XLII

About, (adv.) fēre.
Agamemnon, Agamemnon, ōnis, 3 m.
ago, abhinc.
arrival, adventus, ūs, 4 m.
at-night, noctu.
conclude, to, conficio, fēci, fectum, 3.
course, cursus, ūs, 4 m.
day-break, prima lux.
divide, to, distribuo, ui, ūtum, 3.
eightieth, octōgēsīmus, a, um.
fifth, quintus, a, um.
Flaminius, Flāminius, 2 m.
flourishing, florens, ntis.
fourth, quartus, a, um.
free, to, libēro, avi, atum, 1.
lake, lacus, ūs, 4 m.
middle, mēdius, a, um.
migrate, to, migro, avi, atum, 1.
Mithridates, Mithridātes, is, 3 m.
next, postērus, a, um.
remain, stay, to, mōror, atus sum, 1 dep.
rest, to, conquiesco, quēvi, quēsum, 3.

rise, to, surgo, surrexi, surrectum, 3.

Roscius, Roscius, 2 m.

Saturn, Saturnus, 2 m.

slaughter, to, trucidō, avi, atum, 1.

spring, vēr, vēris, 3 n.

succour, auxilium, 2 n.

sunset, sōlis occāsus, gen. sōlis occasus.

swallow, hīrundo, īnis, 3 c.

three-hundredth, trēcentēsīmus, a, um.

townsman, oppidānus, 2 m.

Trasimene, Trāsīmēnus, 2 m.

Virgil, Virgīlius, 2 m.

watch, vīgīlia, 1 f.

with-difficulty, vix.

Vocabulary XLIII.

Curiatii, Cūriātii, orum, 2 m. pl.

drive-out, to, exīgo, ēgi, actum, 3.

Fabricius, Fabrīcius, 2 m.

good-will, bēnēvolēntia, 1 f.

hasten, to, contendō, di, tum, 3.

hope, spes, ei, 5 f.

Horatius, Hōrātius, 2 m.

intervene, to, interjicio, jēci, jectum, 3.

land, to, expōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3.

learn, to, cognosco, gnōvi, gnītum, 3.

letter, litterae, arum, 1 f. pl.

many, complūres, ium, 3 pl.

neglect, to, negligo, lexi, lectum, 3.

religion, religio, ōnis, 3 f.

remove, to, aufēro, abstūli, ablātum, auferre, irreg.

rise, to, orior, ortus sum, oriri, 4 dep.

send-forward, to, praemitto, mīsi, missum, 3.

set, to (of the sun), occīdo, occīdi, occāsus, 3.

settle, to, constituo, ui, ūtum, 3.

shout, clāmor, ōris, 3 m.

story, fabūla, 1 f.

take-away, to, tollo, sustūli, sublātum, tollere, irreg.

Vocabulary XLIV.

Alive, vīvus, a, um.

animal, animans, ntia, 3.

assist, to, adjūvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.

begin, to, īneo, ii, itum, 4.

break-out, to, erumpo, rūpi, ruptum, 3.

Camillus, Camillus, 2 m.

Caninius, Cāninius, 2 m.

Carthaginians, Carthaginienses, ium, 3 m. pl.

Christ, Christus, 2 m.

climb, to, ascendo, di, sum, 3.

dare, to, audeo, ausus sum, 2.

darkness, tēbrae, arum, 1 f. pl.

emperor, to be, impero, avi, atum, 1.

fleet, classis, is, 3 f.

flourish, to, vīgeo, ui, 2.

guard, custos, ōdis, 3 m.

interest, commōdum, 2 n.

prepare, to, compāro, avi, atum, 1.

signal, signum, 2 n.

youth (young men), juvenus, ūtis, 3 f. collective.

Vocabulary XLV.

Amiable, amābilis, e.

clear, clārus, a, um.

clemency, clēmēntia, 1 f.

cowardice, tmīdītas, ātis, 3 f.

despicable, contemptus, a, um.

godlike, divinus, a, um.

gold, aurum, 2 n.

heavy, grāvis, e.

honey, mel, mellis, 3 n.

less, mīnor, ōris, neut. minus.

light, (adj.) lēvis, e.

lovely, amābilis, e.

pretence, simūlātiō, onis, 3 f.

silver, argentum, 2 n.

vile, foedus, a, um.

warlike, bellīcōsus, a, um; ferox, ocis.

worse, pejor, oris, neut. pejus.

Vocabulary XLVI.

Achaeans, Achaei, orum, 2 m. pl.
Apollonius, Apollōnius, 2 m.
art-of-oratory, ars oratōria, gen. artis oratoriae.
Asclepiodorus, Asclepiodōrus, 2 m.
cost, to, sto, stēti, stātum, stāre, 1, lit. to stand.
Cottus, Cottus, 2 m.
denarius, dēnārius, 2 m.
fee, merces, ēdis, 3 f.
fish, piscis, is, 3 m.
Gorgias, Gorgias, ae, 1 m.
Isocrates, Isocrātes, is, 3 m.
mina, mīna, 1 f.
one-hundred (each), centēni, ae, a.
painter, pictor, ōris, 3 m.
penny, as, assis, 3 m.
picture, tabella, 1 f.; pictūra, 1 f.
Polybius, Polybius, 2 m.
statue, stātua, 1 f.
talent, talentum, 2 n.
wheat, trītīcum, 2 n.

Vocabulary XLVII.

Ability, ingēnium, 2 n.
Agesilaus, Agēsīlāus, 2 m.
bank, ripa, 1 f.
beard, barba, 1 f.
beauty, pulchritūdo, īnis, 3 f.
behoves, it, oportet, uit, 2 impers.
boldness, audacity, audācia, 1 f.
complexion, cōlor, ōris, 3 m.
depraved, pravus, a, um.
distinguished, insignis, e.
Dumnorix, Dumnorix, Igis, 3 m.
eminent, praestans, ntis.
extol, to, collaudo, avi, atum, 1.
fair, candidus, a, um.
firmness, constantia, 1 f.
foresight, prudentia, 1 f.
form, forma, 1 f.
genius, ingēnium, 2 n.
hero, hērōs, herōis, 3 m.
Herodotus, Herōdōtus, 2 m.
Iccius, Iccius, 2 m.
influence, gratia, 1 f.
lance, lancea, 1 f.
long, flowing, promissus, a, um

low, hūmīlis, e.
messenger, nuncius, 2 m.
moderate, mēdiōcris, e.
Murena, Murēna, 1 m.
passage, transitus, ūs, 4 m.
power, vis, acc. vim, abl. vi.
princely, impērātōrius, a, um.
precipitous, praeruptus, a, um.
rank, nobilitas, ātis, 3 f.
remarkable, singulāris, e.
rough, horrens, ntis.
shining, splendens, ntis.
small, exīgūus, a, um.
stature, statūra, 1 f.
steel, ferrum, 2 n.
tall, excelsus, a, um.
tranquil, quietus, a, um.
uprightness, intēgritas, atis, 3 f.

Vocabulary XLVIII.

Abundance, cōpia, 1 f.
acorn, glans, ndis, 3 f.
ancient, vētustus, a, um.
best, optimus, a, um; *in the best way*, optime.
cheese, cāsēus, 2 m.
choose-rather, to, mālō, mālui, malle, irreg.
delightful, suāvis, e.
discharge, to, fungor, functus sum, 3 dep.
ease, otium, 2 n.
enjoy, to, fruor, frūitus sum, 3 dep.
feed-on, to, vescor, vesci, 3 dep.
flesh, cārō, carnis, 3 f.
happy, felix, icis.
health, valetūdo, īnis, 3 f.
judgment, iudiciūm, 2 n.
maritime, maritīmus, a, um.
milk, lac, lactis, 3 n.
Numidians, Numidae, arum, 1 m. pl.
plain, campus, 2 m.
present, (adj.) praesens, ntis.
sky, coelum, 2 n.
spoil, praeda, 1 f.
take-possession-of, to, pōtior, potitus sum, 4 dep.

use, to, utor, usus sum, 3 dep.
wild-beast, fēra, 1 f.; of-wild-
beasts, (adj.) ferinus, a, um.

Vocabulary XLIX.

Beneficence, beneficentia, 1 f.
deceive, to, dēcipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
exploits, res gestae; gen. rerum
gestarum, f.
goodness, bōnitas, atis, 3 f.
hare, lēpus, ōris, 3 m.
Milo, Milo, ōnis, 3 m.
mount-up, to, ascendo, di, sum, 3.
or—not, annon (in direct ques-
tions).
step, grādus, ūs, 4 m.
surpass, to, supēro, avi, atum, 1.
what-sort-of, quālis, e.
whence? unde?
white, candidus, a, um.
whether—or, utrum—an.
whither? quo?

Vocabulary L.

Ask (question), to, quaero, sīvi,
sītum, 3.
do, to, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
how, quam, quomodo.
or—not, necne (in indirect ques-
tions).
relieve, to, sēdo, avi, atum, 1.
soon, mox.
where, ubi.

Vocabulary LI.

Attack, to, oppugno, avi, atum, 1.
Cinnamatus, Cinnamatus, 2 m.
fetch, to, abduco, xi, ctum, 3.
grief, dōlor, ōris, 3 m.
happily, beāte.
here (hither), huc.
increase, to, augeo, xi, ctum, 2.
open, to, pātēfacio, fēcī, factum, 3.
peaceably, quīēte.
plough, aratrum, 2 n.
recover, to, reficio, fēcī, fectum, 3.

silent, to be, taceo, ui, itum, 2.
strength, vīres, ium, 3 f. pl. of vis.
strive, to, enītor, nīsus and nīxus
sum, 3 dep.

Vocabulary LII.

Advise, to, mōneo, ui, itum, 2.
beg, to, precor, atus sum, 1 dep.;
ōro, avi, atum, 1.
care, to take, curo, avi, atum, 1.
command, to, impēro, avi, atum, 1.
dismiss, to, dimitto, misi, missum,
3.
drive, to, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.
forsake, to, dēsēro, rui, rtum, 3.
go-away, to, abscedo, cessi, cessum,
3.
hasten, to, prōpēro, avi, atum, 1.
order, to, impēro, avi, atum, 1
(with dat.).
persuade, to, persuadeo, si, sum, 2
(with dat.).
require, to, postulo, avi, atum, 1.
sincere, sincērus, a, um.
stop, to, māneo, si, sum, 2.
urge, to, hortor, atus sum, 1 dep.
when? quando?

Vocabulary LIII.

Again, Itērum.
attack, to, ādōrior, adortus sum,
4 dep.
consternation, pāvor, ōris, 3 m.
cut-off, to, intercludo, si, sum, 3.
escape, to, effūgio, fūgi, 3.
fear, to, metuo, ui, 3; timeo, ui,
2; vereor, veritus sum, 2 dep.
find, to, invēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.
foolishly, stulte.
great, grandis, e.
lead-out, to, ēduco, xi, ctum, 3.
mortal, mortifērus, a, um.
ornament, ornamentum, 2 n.
perish, to, pereor, ii, itum, 4 irreg.
recover, to, recīpio, cēpi, ceptum,
3.
support, to, sustīneo, tīnui, ten-
tum, 2.

take-by-storm, to, expugno, avi, atum, 1.
toil, labor, ōris, 3 m.
too-late, sērius, compar. of sēro (adv.), late.

Vocabulary LIV.

Contrary, contrārius, a, um.
doubt, dūbium, 2 n.
doubt, to, dūbīto, avi, atum, 1.
here, hic.
shortly, brēvi.
vice, vītium, 2 n.

Vocabulary LV.

Accomplish, to, perficio, fēcī, fec-tum, 3.
childhood, puērītia, 1 f.
fear, timor, ōris, 3 m.
greatly, magnōpērē.
hardly, fēre.
iron-hearted, ferreus, a, um.
keep-coming, to, ventīto, avi, atum, 1.
Satrius, Satrius, 2 m.
saucy, protervus, a, um.
sometimes, aliquando, interdum, nonnunquam.
swine, sūs, suis, 3 c.
walk, to, ambūlo, avi, atum, 1.
weep, to, fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2.
wonderful, mirus, a, um.

Vocabulary LVI.

Appease, to, plāco, avi, atum, 1.
call, to, compello, avi, atum, 1.
daily, quōtidie.
gain (a victory), to, reporto, avi, atum, 1.
help, to, subvēnio, vēni, ventum, 4 (with dat.).
leave-undone, to, praetermitto, mīsi, missum, 3.
let-pass, to, intermitto, mīsi, mis-sum, 3.
miserable, mīser, a, um.

reason, causa, 1 f.
rejoice, to, gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, 2.
traitor, prōdītor, ōris, 3 m.

Vocabulary LVII.

Accident, cāsus, ūs, 4 m.
by-force, vi, abl. of vis, 3 f. defect.
carry-off, to, abduco, xi, ctum, 3.
cultivate, to, tracto, avi, atum, 1.
deter, to, deterreo, ui, itum, 2.
hinder, to, impēdio, ivi and ii, itum, 4.
literature, litterae, arum, 1 f. pl.
obey, to, ōbēdio, ivi, itum, 4, with dat.
prevent, to, obsto, stīti, stītum, stāre, 1.
prohibit, to, prōhībeo, ui, itum, 2.
Scaurus, Scaurus, 2 m.
side-with, to, adsum, fui, esse (with dat.).

Vocabulary LVIII.

Acquire, to, ādīpīscor, adeptus sum, 3 dep.
attempt, to, cōnor, atus sum, 1 dep.
cohort, cōhors, tis, 3 f.
deal-with, to, tracto, avi, atum, 1.
deliberate, to, dēlibēro, avi, atum, 1.
Duilius, Duilius, 2 m.
feed, to, ālo, ālui, ālītum and altum, 3.
find-out, to, investigo, avi, atum, 1.
flatter, to, ādūlor, atus sum, 1 dep.
forage, to, pābūlor, atus sum, 1 dep.
help, to, sublēvo, avi, atum, 1.
inquire, to, quaero, sīvi, sītum, 3.
navigate, to, nāvīgo, avi, atum, 1.
neighbouring, vicinus, a, um.
practised, exercitatus, a, um.
remain, to, rēmāneo, si, sum, 2.
repose, to, quiesco, quīēvi, quīētum, 3.
satisfy, to, satisfācio, fēcī, factum, 3 (with dat.).
science, scientia, 1 f.
seize-on, to, occūpo, avi, atum, 1.

sharpen, to, acuo, ui, utum, 3.
sow, to, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.
suitable, idōneus, a, um.

Vocabulary LIX.

Blot-out, to, dēleo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
desire, to, expeto, ivi and ii, itum, 3.
Eumenes, Eumēnes, is, 3 m.
expose, to, expōno, pōsui, pōsītum, 3.
filial-duty, pietas, atis, 3 f.
injustice, injustitia, 1 f.
intemperance, intemperantia, 1 f.
not, haud.
plunder, to, dirīpio, ripui, reptum, 3.
prefer, to, antepōno, pōsui, pōsītum, 3 (with acc. and dat.).
stain, mactūla, 1 f.
think, to, censeo, ui, sum, 2.

Vocabulary LX.

Albans, Albāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
amuse-onself, to, oblector, atus sum, 1 dep.
dedicate, to, dēdico, avi, atum, 1.
elegance, elegantia, 1 f.
now, jam.
pretext, causa, 1 f.
select, to, dēligo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
set-on-fire, to, incendo, di, sum, 3.
snatch-away, to, ēripio, ui, eptum, 3.
Tiberius Gracchus, Tiberius Gracchus, 2 m.
train-up, to, ērūdio, ivi, itum, 4.

Vocabulary LXI.

Adapt-onself, to, servio, ii, itum, 4 (with dat.).
aid, to, subvénio, vēni, ventum, 4 (with dat.).
as-long-as, dum.
benefit, bēnēficiūm, 2 n.
lesson, praeceptum, 2 n.
living-creature, animans, ntis.
obey, to, obtempero, avi, atum, 1 (with dat.).
resist, to, resisto, restīti, 3 (with dat.).
word, verbum, 2 n.

Vocabulary LXII.

Aequi, Aequi, orum, 2 m. pl.
Asia, Asia, 1 f.
befal, to, accīdo, accīdi, 3.
complain-of, to, quēror, questus sum, 3 dep.
congratulate, to, grātūlor, atus sum, 1 dep.
consult (an oracle), to, delibero, avi, atum, 1.
greet, to, sālūto, avi, atum, 1.
look-on-at, to, specto, avi, atum, 1.
Maecenas, Maecēnas, atis, 3 m.
marvellous, mirābilis, o.
nearly, fēre.
prodigy, prōdīgium, 2 n.
recol, to, rēvōco, avi, atum, 1.
shameful, turpis, e.
Spartans, Lācēdaemōnii, orum, 2 m. pl.
Suessa Pometia, Suessa Pometia, 1 f.

BIRD.

bird, *avis*, is, 3 c.
birth (high birth), *nobilitas*, *atis*, 3 f.
biting, *morsus*, ūs, 4 m.
Blaesus, *Blaesus*, 2 m.
blame, to, *culpo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
blind, *caecus*, a, um.
blood, *sanguis*, *inis*, 3 m.
blot-out, to, *dēleo*, *ēvi*, *ētum*, 2.
boast, to, *glorior*, *atus* sum, 1 dep.
body, *corpus*, *ōris*, 3 n.
boldness, *audacity*, *audacia*, 1 f.
book, *liber*, *bri*, 2 m.
born, to be, *nascor*, *nātus* sum, *nāci*, 3 dep.
both—and, et—et.
boy, *puer*, *ēri*, 2 m.
brave, *fortis*, e.
brave, to, *contemno*, *pei*, *ptum*, 3.
bravely, *fortiter*.
bravery, *fortitudo*, *inis*, 3 f.
break, to, *frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, 3.
break-out, to, *ērumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, 3.
bribery, *ambitus*, ūs, 4 m.
bride, *pons*, *ntis*, 3 m.
bring, to, *duco*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3 (Ex. 21); *fēro*, *tūli*, *lātum*, *ferre*, *irreg.* (Ex. 27).
bring (a ship), to, *dēduco*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.
bring-in, to, *introduco*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.
Britain, *Britannia*, 1 f.
Britons, *Britanni*, *orum*, 2 m. pl.
broad, *lātus*, a, um.
brother, *frāter*, *tris*, 3 m.
Brundisium, *Brundisium*, 2 n.
Brutus, *Brutus*, 2 m.
build, to (a house), *aedifico*, *avi*, *atum*, 1; (a nest) *pōno*, *pōtū*, *pōltum*, 3.
building, *aedificium*, 2 n.
bull, *taurus*, 2 m.
burn, to (set fire to), *incendo*, *di*, *sum*, 3.
bury, to, *sēpello*, *ivi* and *ii*, *pultum*, 4.
business, *nēgōtium*, 2 n.
but, at (Ex. 21), *sed* (Ex. 26).
buy, to, *ēmo*, *ēmi*, *emptum*, 3.
by-chance, *cāsu* (*abl.* of *cāsus*, ūs, 4 m., *used adverbially*).
by-far, *longe*.
by-see, *vi* (*abl.* of *vis*, 3 f.).

CHILDHOOD.

C

Cadis, *Gādes*, *Ium*, 3 f. pl.
Cadmus, *Cadmus*, 2 m.
Caecilia, *Caecilia*, 1 f.
Caelius, *Caelius*, 2 m.
Caesar, *Caesar*, *āris*, 3 m.
Caius, *Calus*, 2 m.
calamity, *calamitas*, *ātis*, 3 f.
call, to, *dico*, *dixi*, *dictum*, 3; *voco*, *avi*, *atum* (Ex. 7); *appello*, *avi*, *atum*, 1 (Ex. 11); *compello*, *avi*, *atum*, 1 (Ex. 56).
Camillus, *Camillus*, 2 m.
camp, *castra*, *orum*, 2 n. pl.
Campanian, *Campanus*, a, um.
can, *possum*, *potui*, *posse*, *irreg.*
Caninius, *Caninius*, 2 m.
Canusium, *Canusium*, 2 n.
capable-of-enduring, *pātiens*, *ntis*.
Capitol, *Cāpitōlium*, 2 n.
Capua, *Cāpua*, 1 f.
care, *cura*, 1 f.
care, to take, *curo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
carelessness, *negligentia*, 1 f.
carry, to, *porto*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
carry-off, to, *abduco*, *xi*, *ctum*, 3.
Carthage, *Carthāgo*, *inis*, 3 f.
Carthaginians, *Carthāgi-nenses*, *Ium*, 3 m. pl.
cat, *felis*, is, 3 f.
Catilinarian, *Catilinarius*, a, um.
Catiline, *Cātilīna*, 1 m.
Cato, *Cāto*, *ōnis*, 3 m.
cattle, *pecus*, *ōris*, 3 n.
cause, *causa*, 1 f.
cavalry, *equites*, *um*, 3 m. pl. (Ex. 37); *equitatus*, ūs, 4 m. (Ex. 39).
Ceres, *Cerēs*, *ōris*, 3 f.
certain, *certus*, a, um (Ex. 6); a *certain* (person), *quidam*, *quedam*, *quoddam* (Ex. 22).
change, to, *muto*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
chastise, to, *castigo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
cheap, *villis*, e.
check, to, *sustineo*, *tinui*, *tentum*, 2.
cheese, *cāsēus*, 2 m.
childhood, *pueritia*, 1 f.

CONFIDENCE.

children, *liberi*, *orum*, 2 m. pl.
choose, to, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, 3; *eligo*, *legi*, *lectum*, 3.
choose-rather, to, *malo*, *malui*, *malie*.
chosen, *delectus*, a, um.
Christ, *Christus*, 2 m.
Christian, *Christianus*, 2 m.
Cicero, *Cicero*, *ōnis*, 3 m.
Cincinnatus, *Cincinnatus*, 2 m.
citadel, *arx*, *arcis*, 3 f.
citizen, *civis*, is, 3 m.
city, *urbs*, is, 3 f.
civil, *civilis*, e.
Claudia, *Claudia*, 1 f.
clear, *clarus*, a, um.
clemency, *clementia*, 1 f.
climb, to, *ascendo*, *di*, *sum* 3.
Clitus, *Clitus*, 2 m.
Clodius, *Clodius*, 2 m.
close-to, *juxta*, *prep.* with *acc.*
clothe, to, *vestio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.
cloud, *nubes*, is, 3 f.
cohort, *cohors*, *tis*, 3 f.
cold, *algor*, *ōris*, 3 m.
colleague, *collēga*, 1 m.
colonist, *colōnus*, 2 m.
colour, *color*, *ōris*, 3 m.
column, *columna*, 1 f.
come, to, *vēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4 (Ex. 3); *pervēnio*, *vēni*, *ventum*, 4 (Ex. 23).
comely, *decōrus*, a, um.
command, *mandatum*, 2 n. (Ex. 30); *impērium*, 2 n. (Ex. 36).
command, to, *praesum*, *fui*, *esse* (Ex. 37); *jubeo*, *jussi*, *jussum*, 2 (Ex. 41); *impēro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1 (Ex. 52).
commit, to, *committo*, *misi*, *missum*, 3.
common, *commūnis*, e.
commonwealth, *rēpublica*, *rēpublicae*, f.
companion, *cōmēs*, *itis*, 3 c.
complain-of, to, *quēror*, *questus* sum, 3 dep.
complexion, *color*, *ōris*, 3 m.
complicity, *societas*, *atis*, 3 f.
conceal, to, *cēlo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
conclude, to, *conficio*, *fēci*, *fectum*, 3.
condemn, to, *damno*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.
confess, to, *confiteor*, *fessus* sum, 2 dep.
confidence, *fiducia*, 1 f.

CONGRATULATE.

congratulate, to, grātūlor, atus sum, 1 *dep.*
connection, sociētās, ātis, 3 *f.*
conquer, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3.
conqueror, victor, ōris, 3 *m.*
conscious, conscius, a, um.
consider, to, arbitror, atus sum, 1 *dep.*
considerately, considerāte.
considered, to be, hābeor, hābitus sum, 2 *pass.*
conspiracy, conjuratio, ōnis, 3 *f.*
constancy, constantia, 1 *f.*
constant, assiduus, a, um.
consternation, pavor, ōris, 3 *m.*
constitute, to, instituo, ul, utum, 3.
consul, consul, ātis, 3 *m.*
consulship, consulatus, ūs, 4 *m.*
consult, to, delibero, avi, atum, 1.
contemporary, sequālis, e.
contented, contentus, a, um.
contention, contentio, ōnis, 3 *f.*
contrary, contrārius, a, um.
convict, to, convinco, vici, victum, 3.
Coreyra, Corcyra, 1 *f.*
Corinth, Corinthus, 2 *f.*
corn, frumentum, 2 *n.* (Ex. 10); sēgēs, ētis, 3 *f.* (Ex. 14).
cost, to, sto, stēti, stātum, stāre, 1 (lit. to stand).
Cottus, Cottus, 2 *m.*
counsel, consiliū, 2 *n.*
count, to, puto, avi, atum, 1.
countenance, vultus, ūs, 4 *m.*
countless, innumerābilis, e.
country (native-land), patria, 1 *f.*; (as opposed to town), rus, ruris, 3 *n.*
courage, fortitudo, ōnis, 3 *f.*
course, cursus, ūs, 4 *m.*
covetous, appetens, ntis (Ex. 33); avarus, a, um (Ex. 34).
cow, bos, bovis, 3 *f.*
coward, timidus (homo being understood), 2 *m.*
cowardice, ignavia, 1 *f.* (Ex. 25); timiditas, ātis, 3 *f.* (Ex. 45).
Crassus, Crassus, 2 *m.*
create, to, creo, avi, atum, 1.
creator, creātor, ōris, 3 *m.*
credible, crēdibilis, e.

DEIOTARUS.

crime, crimen, ōnis, 3 *n.*
Croesus, Croesus, 2 *m.*
cross, to, transeo, ii, itum, ire, 4 (Ex. 2); supero, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 16); traficio, jēci, jectum, 3 (Ex. 21).
crown, corona, 1 *f.*
cruelty, crudēlitas, ātis, 3 *f.*
cultivate, to, cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3 (Ex. 31); tracto, avi, atum (Ex. 57).
Cuma, Cūmae, arum, 1 *f. pl.*
cunning, astus, ūs, 4 *m.*
cure, to, mēdeor, 2 *dep.*
Curiatii, Curiātii, orum, 2 *m. pl.*
Curius, Curius, 2 *m.*
custom, consuetudo, ōnis, 3 *f.*
cut-off, to, intercludo, ūi, ūsum, 3.

D

Daily, quōtidie.

dance, to, salto, avi, atum, 1.
danger, pericūlum, 2 *n.*
dare, to, audeo, ausus sum, 2.
Darius, Darius, 2 *m.*
darkness, tenebrae, arum, 1 *f. pl.*
darling, deliciae, arum, 1 *f. pl.*
daughter, filia, 1 *f.*
day, dies, ei, 5 *m.*
daybreak, prima lux.
dead, mortuus, a, um.
deaf, surdus, a, um.
deal-with, to, tracto, avi, atum, 1.
dear, carus, a, um.
death, mors, tis, 3 *f.*
deceive, to, decipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
declare, to, declāro, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 7); dico, dixi, dictum, 3 (Ex. 14).
decrease, to, decresco, crēvi, crētum, 3.
dedicate, to, dēdicō, avi, atum, 1.
deed, factum, 2 *n.*
deem, to, puto, avi, atum, 1.
deep, altus, a, um.
defeat, to, fundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3.
defence, dēfensio, ōnis, 3 *f.*
defend, to, dēfendo, di, sum, 3 (Ex. 5); tutor, atus sum, 1 *dep.* (Ex. 40).
Deiotarus, Dēiōtarus, 2 *m.*

DISGRACE.

deity, deus, 2 *m.*
deliberate, to, dēlibēro, avi, atum, 1.
delightful, suavis, e.
Delos, gen. Deli, acc. Delum, 2 *f.*
Delphi, Delphi, orum, 2 *m. pl.*
demand, to, flāgitō, avi, atum, 1; posco, poposci, 3.
Demaratus, Dēmārātus, 2 *m.*
Democritus, Dēmōcritus, 2 *m.*
Demosthenes, Demosthenes, is, 3 *m.*
denarius, dēnārius, 2 *m.*
deny, to, nēgo, avi, atum, 1.
depart, to, discēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.
depraved, prāvus, a, um.
desert, to, relinquo, liqui, lictum, 3.
deserter, perfūga, 1 *m.*
design, consiliū, 2 *n.*
desire, to, cupio, ivi or ii, itum, 3 (Ex. 7); expeto, ivi or ii, itum, 3 (Ex. 59).
desirous, appetens, ntis.
despicable, contemptus, a, um.
despise, to, contemno, psi, ptum, 3.
despot, tyrannus, 2 *m.*
destitute, expers, ntis.
destroy, to, dēleo, ēvi, ētum, 2.
destruction, exitium, 2 *n.*
deter, to, deterreo, ul, itum, 2.
determine, to, statuo, ui, atum, 3.
Diana, Diāna, 1 *f.*
dictator, dictator, ōris, 3 *m.*
die, to, mōrto, mortuus sum, mori, 3 *dep.*
different, dispar, pāris.
difficult, difficilis, e.
dig-out, to, effodio, fōdi, fossum, 3.
diligence, diligentia, 1 *f.*
diligent, diligens, ntis.
Dionysius, Diōnysius, 2 *m.*
disagreeable, ingrātus, a, um.
discern, to, cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.
discharge, to, fungor, functus sum, fungi, 3 *dep.*
discharge - from - service, missio, ōnis, 3 *f.*
discourse, sermo, ōnis, 3 *m.*
disease, morbus, 2 *m.*
disgrace, dedēcus, ōris, 3 *n.* probum, 2 *n.*

DISGRACEFUL.

disgraceful, turpis, e.
dismiss, to, dimitto, misi, missum, 3.
disposition, indoles, is, 3 f.
dissension, dissensio, onis, 3 f.
distance, to be at a, absum, abful, abesse.
distinguished, clārus, a, um (Ex. 22); insignis, e (Ex. 47).
ditch, fossa, 1 f.
divide, to, distribuō, ui, utum, 3.
divine, divinus, a, um.
do, to, facio, feci, factum, 3 (Ex. 4); ago, ēgi, actum, 3 (Ex. 50).
doctor, medicus, 2 m.
dog, canis, is, 3 m.
do-good-to, to, prōsum, proful, prōdesse.
Dolabella, Dōlabella, 1 m.
doubt, dubium, 2 n.
doubt, to, dubito, avi, atum, 1.
dream, somnium, 2 n.
dream, to, somnio, avi, atum, 1.
drink, to, poto, avi, atum, 1.
drive, to, ago, ēgi, actum, 3.
drive-out, to, exigo, ēgi, actum, 3.
Dullius, Duilius, 2 m.
dumb, mutus, a, um.
Dumnorix, Dumnōrix, Igis, 3 m.
duty, officium, 2 n.
dwel, to, habito, avi, atum, 1.

E

Eager, stādīōsus, a, um.
ear, auris, is, 3 f.
early, mātūre.
earth, terra, 1 f.
ease, otium, 2 n.
easy, faciilis, e.
eat, to, edo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.
economy, parsimonia, 1 f.
educate, to, ēduco, avi, atum, 1.
effect, effectus, ūs, 4 m.
Egerius, Egerius, 2 m.
Egypt, Aegyptus, 2 f.
Egyptians, Aegyptii, orum, 2 m. pl.
eight, octo.
eighteen, duōdēviginti.
eightieth, octogēsimus, a, um.
eighty, octoginta.

FABIUS.

elders, mājores nātū, irreg. compar. of sēnex.
elect, to, creō, avi, atum, 1.
elegance, ēlēgantia, 1 f.
elegant, ēlēgans, ntis.
elements, ēlēmenta, orum, 2 n. pl.
elephant, ēlēphantus, 2 m.
eloquence, ēlōquentia, 1 f.
eminent, praestans, ntis.
emperor, impērator, ōris, 3 m. (Ex. 11); princeps, Igis, 3 m. (Ex. 35).
emperor, to be, impēro, avi, atum, 1.
enemy, hostis, is, 3 m.
enjoy, to, fruor, frui sum, 3 dep.
enough, sātis.
entire, intēger, gra, grum.
entrust, to, mando, avi, atum, 1.
envy, to, invidēo, vidi, visum, 2.
Ephesus, Ephesus, 2 m.
Epicurus, Epicurus, 2 m.
err, to, erro, avi, atum, 1.
escape, to, effugio, fugi, 3.
especially, maxime.
esteemed, to be, habēor, hābitus sum, 2 pass.
Eumenes, Eumēnes, is, 3 m.
even, etiam.
ever, unquam.
evident, manifestus, a, um.
evil, mālum, 2 n.
excellent, summus, a, um.
except, conj. (=unless) nisi (Ex. 6); praeter, prep. with acc. (Ex. 39).
excessive, nimius, a, um.
execute, to, administro, avi, atum, 1.
exhort, to, hortor, atus sum, 1 dep.
expel, to, ejicio, jeci, jectum, 3.
expense, sumptus, ūs, 4 m.
experience, usus, ūs, 4 m.
exploits, res gestae, gen. rerum gestarum, f.
expose, to, expōno, pōsi, pōsitum, 3.
extol, to, collaudo, avi, atum, 1.
extortion, rēpētundae, arum, 1 f. pl.
eye, ōculus, 2 m.

F

Fabia, Fābia, 1 f.
Fabius, Fābius, 2 m.

FLEET.

Fabricius, Fabricius, 2 m.
faction, factio, onis, 3 f.
fail, to, dēsum, fui, esse.
fair, candidus, a, um.
faithful, fidēlis, e.
fall, to, cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, 3.
famous, clārus, a, um.
farm, praedium, 2 n.
farmer, agricola, 1 m.
fate, fātum, 2 n.
father, pāter, tris, 3 m.
fault, vitium, 2 n. (Ex. 30); culpa, 1 f. (Ex. 31).
favour, bēnēficiū, 2 n.
favour, to, fāveo, fāvi, faurum, 2, with dat.
fear, mētus, ūs, 4 m. (Ex. 25); timor, ōris, 3 m. (Ex. 55).
fear, to, timeo, ui, 2 (Ex. 20); mētuo, ui, utum, 3; vēreor, vēritus sum, 2 dep. (Ex. 53).
fee, merces, ēdis, 3 f.
feed, to, alio, alui, alitum, 3.
feed-on, to, vescor, 3 dep. with abl.
feel, to, sentio, si, sum, 4.
fertility, fertilitas, atis, 3 f.
fervour, impētus, ūs, 4 m.
fetoh, to, abduco, xi, actum, 3.
few, pauci, ae, a (plur.).
fidelity, fides, ēi, 5 f.
field, ager, agri, 2 m.
fifth, quintus, a, um.
fight, to, pugno, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 1); dimico, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 12).
filial-duty, piētās, atis, 3 f.
find, to, invenio, vēni, ventum, 4.
find-leisure, to, vāco, avi, atum, 1.
find-out, to, investigo, avi, atum, 1.
fine, multa, 1 f.
finish, to, conficō, feci, fecutum, 3.
fire, ignis, is, 3 m.; of-fire, igneus, a, um; with fire and sword, igni ferroque.
firmness, constantia, 1 f.
first, primus, a, um.
fish, piscis, is, 3 m.
five, quinque.
Flaccus, Flaccus, 2 m.
Flaminius, Flāminius, 2 m.
Flamininus, Flāmininus, 2 m.
flatter, to, adūlor, atus sum, 1 dep.
fleet, classis, is, 3 f.

FLESH.

flesh, caro, carnis, 3 f.
flourish, to, vigeo, ui, 2.
flourishing, florens, ntis.
flow, to, fluo, xi, xum, 3.
flower, flos, floris, 3 m.
fly, to, fugio, fugi, fugitum, 3.
fodder, pabulum, 2 n.
follow, to, sequor, secutus sum, 3 dep.
folly, stultitia, 1 f.
fond-of, cupidus, a, um.
fool, stultus, 2 m.
foolish, stultus, a, um.
foolishly, stulte.
foot, pes, pedis, 3 m.; *on foot*, pedibus (abl. plur.).
foot-soldier, pedites, itis, 3 m.
for, on-behalf-of, pro, prep. with abl.
forage, to, pabulor, atus sum, 1 dep.
forces, copiae, arum, 1 f. pl.
foresight, prudentia, 1 f.
forget, to, obliviscor, oblitus sum, 3 dep.
forgetful, oblitus, a, um.
form, figura, 1 f. (Ex. 29); forma, 1 f. (Ex. 47).
formerly, ante.
forsake, to, desero, rui, ritum, 3.
for-the-sake-of, causâ, with gen.
fortification, munition, onis, 3 f.
fortified, munitus, a, um.
fortify, to, munio, lvi, itum, 4.
fortunate, felix, icis.
fortune, fortuna, 1 f.
forty, quadraginta.
found, to, condo, didi, ditum, 3.
founder, conditor, oris, 3 m.
four, quattuor.
four (each), quaterni, ae, a.
fourth, quartus, a, um.
free, to, libero, avi, atum, 1.
freedman, libertinus, 2 m.
friend, amicus, 2 m.
friendly, amicus, a, um.
friendship, amicitia, 1 f.
from, = away from, a or ab, prep. with abl.; = out-of, ex, prep. with abl.
fruits (of the earth), fruges, um, 3 f. pl.

G

Gabii, Gabii, orum, 2 m. pl.
gain, quaestus, us, 4 m.

HAPPILY.

gain, to (a victory), reporto, avi, atum, 1.
garden, hortus, 2 m.
gate, porta, 1 f.
Gaul, Gallia, 1 f.
Gauls, Galli, orum, 2 m. pl.
general, dux, cis, 3 m.; imperator, oris, 3 m.
genius, ingenium, 2 n.
German, Germani, orum, 2 m. pl.
gift, donum, 2 n.
girl, puella, 1 f.
give, to, do, dedi, ditum, dare, 1.
glory, gloria, 1 f.
goat, capella, 1 f. (she-goat).
go-away, to, abeo, ii, itum, 4 irreg. (Ex. 21); abecedo, cessi, cessum, 3 (Ex. 52).
god, deus, 2 m.
goddess, dea, 1 f.
godlike, divinus, a, um.
gold, aurum, 2 n.
golden, aureus, a, um.
good, bonus, a, um.
goodness, bonitas, atis, 3 f.
goodwill, benevolentia, 1 f.
go-out, to, exeo, ii, itum, 4.
Gorgias, Gorgias, ae, 1 m.
govern, to, gubernor, avi, atum (Ex. 4); impéro, avi, atum (Ex. 36).
government, domínatus, us, 4 m.
great, magnus, a, um (Ex. 5); grandis, e (Ex. 53).
greatly, magnopere.
greed, avaritia, 1 f.
greedy, avidus, a, um.
Greek, Graecus, a, um.
greet, to, saluto, avi, atum, 1.
grey, canus, a, um.
grief, dolor, oris, 3 m.
grieve, to, doleo, ui, itum, 2.
grove, lucus, 2 m.
grow, to, cresco, crevi, cretum, 3.
guard, praesidium, 2 n. (Ex. 39); custos, odis, 3 m. (Ex. 44).
guardian, custos, odis, 3 m.
guardianship, custodia, 1 f.

H

Hair, capillus, 2 m.
hand, manus, us, 4 f.
Hannibal, Hannibal, is, 3 m.
happen, to, accido, cidi, 3.
happily, beate.

HOOR.

happy, beatus, a, um (Ex. 14); felix, icis (Ex. 48).
hardly, fere.
hare, lepus, oris, 3 m.
hasten, to, mäturo, avi, atum (Ex. 41); contendo, di, tum, 3 (Ex. 43); propéro, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 52).
hate, to, odi, isse, verb defective.
hatred, odium, 2 n.
have, to, habeo, ui, itum, 2.
he, she, it, is, ea, id.
head, caput, itis, 3 n.
health, valetudo, inis, 3 f.
hear, to, audio, lvi, itum, 4.
hearer, audiens, ntis, 3 c.
heart, cor, cordis, 3 n.
heavy, gravis, e.
Hector, Hector, oris, 3 m.
heir, heres, edis, 3 m.
Helen, Helena, 1 f.
help, to, subvenio, veni, ventum, 4 (with dat., Ex. 56); sublevo, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 55).
Helvetii, Helvetii, orum, 2 m. pl.
herb, herba, 1 f.
here, hic.
here (hither), huc.
hero, héros, heróis, 3 m.
Herodotus, Herodotus, 2 m.
hide, corium, 2 n.
Hiero, Hiero, onis, 3 m.
high, altus, a, um.
high-bred, ingenuus, a, um.
himself, se (acc.), sibi (dat.).
hinder, to, impedio, lvi and ii, itum, 4.
his, her, its, suus, a, um.
history, historia, 1 f.
hold, to, habeo, ui, itum, 2.
home, domus, us, f.; to one's home, domum (acc.); at home, domi (locat.); from home, domo (abl.).
honest, probus, a, um.
honesty, probitas, atis, 3 f.
honer, mel, mellis, 3 n.
honour, honos, oris, 3 m.
honourable, honestus, a, um..
hope, spes, ei, 5 f.
hope, to, spero, avi, atum, 1.
hoped-for, speratus, a, um.
Horace, Horatius, 2 m.
horn, cornu, us, 4 n.
horse, equus, 2 m.
horse-soldier, eques, itis, 3 m.
hostage, obsec, idis, 3 m.
hostile, inimicus, a, um.
hour, hora, 1 f.

HOUSE.

house, dŏmus, ūs, 4 f.
 how, quam, quŏmodo.
 human, hūmānus, a, um.
 hunger, inēdia, 1 f.
 hurt, to, nŏcŏo, ui, itum, 2.
 husband, vir, 2 m.
 husbandman, agricŏla, 1 m.

I

Ice, glācies, ŏi, 5 f.
 Iccius, Iccius, 2 m.
 idle, ignāvus, a, um.
 if, si.
 ignorant, ignārus, a, um;
 nescius, a, um.
 ill, aegrŏtus, a, um.
 ill, to be, aegrŏto, avi, atum,
 1.
 illumine, to, illustro, avi,
 atum, 1.
 imitate, to, imitŏr, atus sum,
 1 dep.
 immense, immensus, a, um
 (Ex. 24); ingens, ntis (Ex.
 27).
 impeach, to, posthlo, avi,
 atum, 1.
 impediment, impēdimen-
 tum, 2 n.
 impious, impiŏtas, atia, 3 f.
 impious, impius, a, um.
 import, to, supporto, avi,
 atum, 1.
 impute, to, verto, ti, sum, 3.
 in, in (with abl.); into, in
 (with acc.)
 inactive, ignāvus, a, um.
 incentive, irritāmentum, 2
 n.
 inch, digītus, 2 m.
 incitement, incitāmentum,
 2 n.
 increase, to, cresco, crēvi,
 crētum, 3 (Ex. 1); augeo,
 xi, ctum, 3 (Ex. 51).
 indeed, quidem.
 indolence, segnīties, ei, 5 f.
 indulge, to, indulgeo, si,
 tum, 2 (with dat.).
 industry, industria, 1 f.
 infamy, infāmia, 1 f.
 infinite, infinitus, a, um.
 influence, grātia, 1 f.
 inform, to, dŏcŏo, ui, ctum,
 2 (Ex. 10); certiorē fā-
 cĕre.
 informed, to be, certior
 fieri.
 inhabitant, incŏla, 1 c.
 in ure, to, obsum, fui, esse
 (with dat.).
 u-y, injūria, 1 f.

LACEDAEMONIANS.

injustice, injustitia, 1 f.
 inquire, to, quaero, sivi,
 situm, 3.
 insane, to be, furo, ui, 3.
 insect, bestiŏla, 1 f.
 in-sight-of, coram (prep.
 with abl.).
 insolence, insolentia, 1 f.
 intemperance, intemp.ran-
 tia, 1 f.
 interest, commŏdum, 2 n.
 interpreter, interpres, ŏtis,
 3 c.
 intervene, to, interjicio, jēci,
 jectum, 3.
 in-the-power-of, pēnes
 (prep. with acc.).
 into, in (prep. with acc.).
 Iphicrates, Iphicrātes, is, 3
 m.
 iron, (adj.) ferreus, a, um.
 iron-hearted, ferreus, a,
 um.
 island, insŭla, 1 f.
 Isocrates, Isocrātes, is, 3 m.
 Italy, Itālia, 1 f.
 its-own, suus, a, um.

J

Judge, judex, Ycis, 3 m.
 judgment, consilium, 2 n.
 (Ex. 27); judicium, 2 n.
 (Ex. 48).
 Jugurtha, Jugurtha, 1 m.
 Juno, Juno, ŏnis, 3 f.
 Jupiter, Jupiter, gen. Jovis,
 dŏt. Jovi.
 just, justus, a, um.
 justice, justitia, 1 f.

K

Keep-from (conceal), to,
 cĕlo, avi, atum, 1.
 keep-coming, to, ventito,
 avi, atum, 1.
 king, rex, rĕgis, 3 m.
 kingdom, regnum, 2 n.
 know, to, scio, scivi, scitum,
 4; not-know, to, nescio, ŏi,
 itum, 4.
 knowledge, scientia, 1 f.

L

Labour, lābor, ŏris, 3 m.
 labour, to, lāboro, avi, atum,
 1.
 Lacedaemonians, Lacedae-
 mŏnii, ŏrum, 2 m. pl.

LITTLE-BOY.

lake, lācu-, ūs, 4 m.
 Lampasacus, Lampasacus, 2
 m.
 lance, lancea, 1 f.
 land, to, expŏno, pŏsui, pŏ-i-
 tum, 3.
 Laodicea, Laŏdicĕa, 1 f.
 large, magnus, a, um.
 last, ultimus, a, um.
 lately, nuper.
 Latins, Latini, ŏrum, 2 m.
 pl.
 laugh, to, ridĕo, ri-i, risum,
 2.
 laugh-at, to, ridĕo, risi, ri-
 sum, 2.
 laughing-stock, risus, ūs, 4
 m.
 lavish, profusus, a, um.
 law, lex, lĕgis, 3 f.
 lay-waste, to, vasto, avi,
 atum, 1.
 lead, to, duco, xi, ctum, 3.
 lead-back, to, redūco, xi,
 ctum, 3.
 leader, dux, cis, 3 m.
 lead-forth, to, prodūco, xi,
 ctum, 3.
 leading-men, principes, um,
 3 m. pl.
 lead-out, to, edūco, xi, ctum,
 3.
 learn, to, disco, didici, 3
 (Ex. 1); cognosco, gnovi,
 gnitum, 3 (Ex. 43).
 learn-by-heart, to, ŏdisco,
 ŏdidici, 3.
 learned, doctus, a, um.
 leave, to, relinquo, liqui,
 lictum, 3.
 leave-undone, to, praeter-
 mitto, misi, missum, 3.
 legion, lĕgio, ŏnis, 3 f.
 less, minor, ŏris, neut. minus.
 lesson, praeceptum, 2 n.
 let-pass, to, intermitto, misi,
 missum, 3.
 letter, epistŏla, 1 f. (Ex. 2);
 litterae, arum, 1 f. pl. (Ex.
 43).
 lie, mendacium, 2 n.
 lie, to, jāceo, ui, 2.
 lieutenant, lĕgātus, 2 m.
 lieutenant-general, lĕgā-
 tus, 2 m.
 life, vita, 1 f.
 light (subst.), lux, lucis, 3 f.
 light (adj.), lĕvis, e.
 like, similis, e.
 lion, leo, ŏnis, 3 m.
 literature, litterae, arum, 1
 f. pl.
 little, parvus, a, um.
 little-boy, parvulus, 2 m.

LIVE.

live, to, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.
living, vivus, a, um.
living-creature, animans, ntis.
Livy, Livius, 2 m.
lofty, excelsus, a, um.
Lollus, Lollus, 2 m.
long, longus, a, um.
long-continued, longus, a, um.
long (flowing), promissus, a, um.
look-on-at, to, specto, avi, atum, 1.
lose, to, amitto, misi, misum, 3 (Ex. 2); perdo, didi, ditum, 3 (Ex. 32).
love, amor, ōris, 3 m.
love, to, amo, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 3); diligo, lexi, lectum, 3 (Ex. 15).
lovely, amābilis, e.
low, hūmīlis, e.
Luceria, Lūcēria, 1 f.
Lucilius, Lucillius, 2 m.
Lucius Murena, Lucius Murena, gen. Lucii Murenæ, m.
Lucius Sulla, Lucius Sulla, gen. Lucii Sullæ, m.
Lucius Torquatus, Lucius Torquātus, 2 m.
Lycurgus, Lŷcurgus, 2 m.
Lydians, Lydi, orum, 2 m. pl.
Lysander, Lysander, dri, 2 m.
Lysanias, Lysanias, æe, 1 m.

M

Macedonia, Macedonīa, 1 f.
Macedonians, Măcēdōnes, um, 3 m. pl.
machine, măchīna, 1 f.
made, to be, fio, factus sum, fieri.
madness, furor, ōris, 3 m.
Mæcenæ, Măcēnās, atis, 3 m.
magistrate, măgistrātus, ūs, 4 m.
make, to, facio, feci, factum, 3.
make-populous, to, frequento, avi, atum, 1.
man, homo, inis, 3 m. (Ex. 2); vir, 2 m. (Ex. 6).
manifest, manifestus, a, um.
Manlius, Manlius, 2 m.
manner, mōs, mōris, 3 m.

MODESTY.

many, multus, a, um (Ex. 3); complures, ium, 3 pl. (Ex. 43).
Marathon, Mărithon, ōnis, 3 f.
march, to, prŏgrēdor, gressus sum, 3 dep. (Ex. 9); contendo, di, tum, 3 (Ex. 12).
Marcus Servius, Marcus Servius, 2 m.
marine, classiarius, 2 m.
maritime, mărītimus, a, um.
marry, to, nubo, psi, ptum, 3 (with dat.).
marvellous, mirus, a, um (Ex. 27); mirābilis, e (Ex. 62).
Massilia, Massilia, 1 f.
master, (who teaches) măgister, tri, 2 m.; (who owns) dŏminus, 2 m.
matricide, mătrīcidium, 2 n.
matron, mătrŏna, 1 f.
Mauretania, Mauretānia, 1 f.
Mausolus, Măusŏlus, 2 m.
mean, sordidus, a, um.
mechanician, mēchānicus, 2 m.
Megarians, Mēgărenses, ium, 3 m. pl.
Memnon, Memnon, ōnis, 3 m.
merchant, mercātor, ōris, 3 m.
messenger, nuncius, 2 m.
Metellus, Metellus, 2 m.
middle, mēdius, a, um.
midst-of-battle, āctes, ōis, 5 f.
migrate, to, migro, avi, atum, 1.
mile, mille passus (lit. a thousand paces; passus, ūs, 4 m., a pace): in plur. millia passuum (lit. thousands of paces).
milk, lac, lactis, 3 n.
Milo, Milo, ōnis, 3 m.
Miltiades, Miltiădes, is, 3 m.
mine, mīna, 1 f.
mind, animus, 2 m. (Ex. 12); mens, ntis, 3 f. (Ex. 26).
mindful, mēmor, ōris.
miserable, miser, ēra, ērum.
misfortune, calamitas, ātis, 3 f. (Ex. 7); mālum, 2 n. (Ex. 30).
Mithridates, Mithridătes, is, 3 m.
moderate, mēdiŏcris, e.
modesty, pŭdor, ōris, 3 m. (Ex. 27); verecundia, 1 f. (Ex. 30).

NOR.

money, pecūnia, 1 f.
month, mensis, is, 3 m.
moon, luna, 1 f.
more-than, amplius.
mortal, mortālis, e (Ex. 12); mortiferus, a, um (Ex. 53).
most-of-all, plurimum.
mother, măter, tris, 3 f.
motion, mŏtus, ūs, 4 m.
mound, agger, ōris, 3 m.
Mount Jura, Mons Jura, gen. Montis Juræ.
mount-up, to, ascendo, di, sum, 3.
mourn, to, lugeo, luxi, 2.
mouse, mus, muris, 3 m.
Mucius, Mucius, 2 m.
multitude, multitudo, inis, 3 f.
Mummius, Mummīus, 2 m.
murder, homicidium, 2 n.
Murena, Murena, 1 m.
music, mŭsica, 1 f.
my, meus, a, um.

N

Name, nŏmen, inis, 3 n.
named, to be, appello, atus sum, 1 pass.
Narbo, Narbo, ōnis, 3 m.
narrow, angustus, a, um.
nature, nătŭra, 1 f.
naval, năvālis, e.
navigate, to, năvigŏ, avi, atum, 1.
near, prŏpinquus, a, um; prŏpe, compar. prŏplor, ius; superi. proximus, a, um.
nearly, fere.
necessary, nēcēssē, indecl. neut. adj.
needless, supervacuus, a, um.
neglect, to, negligo, lexi, lectum, 3.
neighbouring, vicinus, a, um.
neither-nor, nec-nec (Ex. 2); neque-neque (Ex. 31).
nest, nidus, 2 m.
never, nunquam.
new, nŏvus, a, um.
next, postŕus, a, um.
night, nox, noctis, 3 f.
nightingale, luscinia, 1 f.
ninet, nŏnăginta.
no, nullus, a, um.
noble, nŏbīlis, e.
none, nŏmo, inis, 3 c.
noon, mērdies, 5 m.
no-one, nŏmo, inis, 3 c.
nor, nec, neque.

NOT.

not, non (Ex. 3); hand (Ex. 59).
 nothing, nihil, *indecl. neut.*
 not only — but also, non solum—sed etiam.
 novelty, novitas, atis, 3 f.
 now, nunc (Ex. 6); jam (Ex. 60).
 Numa, Numa, 1 m.
 number, multitudo, inis, 3 f.; numerus, 2 m.
 numerous, crēber, bra, brum.
 Numidians, Nūmidæ, arum, 1 m. pl.
 Numitor, Nūmītor, ōris, 3 m.

O

Obey, to, pāreo, ul, itum, 2 (Ex. 36); obēdo, ivi, itum, 4 (Ex. 57); obtempero, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 61, *with dat.*).
 oblige, to, cōgo, cōēgi, coactum, 3.
 Octavia, Octāvia, 1 f.
 Octavius, Octāvius, 2 m.
 often, sæpe.
 old, nātus (*masc.*), nāta (*fem.*), *with acc.*
 old-age, sēnectus, ūtis, 3 f.
 old-fashioned, priscus, a, um.
 old-man, sēnex, sēnis, 3 m.
 on, concerning, de (*prep. with abl.*).
 on account of, ob (*prep. with acc.*).
 one, unus, a, um.
 one-another, āllus—āllus; the one—the other, alter—alter.
 one-hundred, centum.
 one-hundred (each), centēni, ae, a.
 one's-own, suus, a, um.
 on-this-side-of, cis (*prep. with acc.*).
 open, to, pātēfācio, fēcī, factum, 3.
 opinion, sententia, 1 f.
 opportunity, occāsio, ōnis, 3 f.
 opposite, diversus, a, um.
 or, aut.
 oration, ōrātiō, ōnis, 3 f.
 orator, ōrātor, ōris, 3 m.
 order, to, impēro, avi, atum, 1 (*with dat.*).
 Orestes, Orestes, is, 3 m.
 Orgetorix, Orgetōrix, Igis, 3 m.
 ornament, ornamentum, 2 n.

PHOCAEA.

or — not, annon (in direct questions, Ex. 49); necne (in indirect questions, Ex. 50).
 other, cētēri, ae, a.
 ought, I, dēbeo, ul, itum, 2.
 our, noster, tra, trum.
 out-of, ex (*prep. with abl.*).
 overcome, to, vinco, vici, victum, 3 (Ex. 3); supero, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 40).
 owner, dōminus, 2 m.

P

Pain, dōlor, ōris, 3 m.
 painter, pictor, ōris, 3 m.
 Pan, Pān, Panis, 3 m.
 pardon, to, ignosco, nōvi, nōtum, 3 (*with dat.*).
 parent, pārens, ntis, 3 c.
 part, pars, partis, 3 f.
 partaker, particeps, cīpis, 3 c.
 party, pars, partis, 3 f.
 passage, transitus, ūs, 4 m.
 past (*prep.*), praeter (*with acc.*).
 past (*adj.*), praeteritus, a, um.
 patience, pātientia, 1 f.
 patient, pātiens, ntis.
 Paulus Aemilius, Paulus Aemilius, 2 m.
 Pausanias, Pausanias, 1 m.
 peace, pax, pācis, 3 f.
 peaceably, quēte.
 peck, mōdus, 2 m.
 pecculation, pēculātus, ūs, 4 m.
 Pelopidas, Pelopidas, ae, 1 m.
 penny, as, assis, 3 m.
 people, pōpulus, 2 m.
 perceive, to, intellēgo, lexi, lectum, 3; sentio, si, sum, 4.
 perhaps, fortasse.
 Pericles, Pericles, is, 3 m.
 perish, to, pereō, li, itum, 4.
 pernicious, perniciosus, a, um.
 Persians, Persae, arum, 1 m. pl.
 persuade, to, persuadeo, si, sum, 2 (*with dat.*).
 Pharnabazus, Pharnabazus, 2 m.
 philosopher, philōsōphus, 2 m.
 philosophy, philōsōphia, 1 f.
 Phocaea, Phocaea, 1 f.

PRESENT.

picture, tabella, 1 f.; pictūra, 1 f.
 pierce, to, confōdio, fōdi, fossum, 3.
 pine, pinus, ūs, 4 f.
 Pisistratus, Pisistrātus, 2 m.
 pitch, to (a camp), pōno, pōsi, pōsitum, 3.
 pity, to, misēreor, itus sum, 2 dep.
 place, lōcus, 2 m.
 plain, (*subst.*) campus, 2 m.; (*adj.*) mānifestus, a, um.
 plant, to, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.
 Plateans, Plateenses, ium, 3 m. pl.
 Plato, Plātō, ōnis, 3 m.
 play, to, ludo, si, sum, 3.
 pleasant, jucundus, a, um.
 please, to, placēo, ul, itum, 2 (*with dat.*).
 pleasure, vōluptas, ātis, 3 f.
 pleasure - ground, hortī, orum, 2 m. pl.
 plebeians, plebs, plēbis, 3 f. sing. collective.
 plebs, plebs, plēbis, 3 f. sing. collective.
 plough, aratrum, 2 n.
 plough, to, āro, avi, atum, 1.
 plunder, praeda, 1 f.
 plunder, to, diripio, ripui, reptum, 3.
 poet, pōeta, 1 m.
 point-out, to, monstro, avi, atum, 1.
 Polybius, Polybīus, 2 m.
 Pompeians, Pompeiāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
 Pompey, Pompēius, 2 m.
 poor, pauper, is.
 post, praesidium, 2 n.
 poverty, paupertas, ātis, 3 f.
 power, impērium, 2 n. (Ex. 33); vis, acc. vim, abl. vi.
 practised, exercitātus, a, um.
 praise, laus, dis, 3 f.
 praise, to, laudo, avi, atum, 1.
 precipitous, praeruptus, a, um.
 prefer, to, antepōno, pōsi, pōsitum, 3 (*with acc. and dat.*).
 prepare-for, to, pāro, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 20); prepare (*get ready*), compāro, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 44).
 present (*subst.*), dōnum, 2 n.
 present (*adj.*), praesens, ntis.

PRESENT.

present, to be, *adsum, fui, esse.*
preserve, to, *conseruo, aui, atum, 1.*
pretence, *simulatio, ōnis, 3 f.*
pretend, to, *simulo, aui, atum, 1.*
pretext, causa, *1 f.*
prevail on, to, *persuadeo, si, sum, 2 (with dat.).*
prevent, to, *obsto, stitli, stitum, stāre, 1.*
Priam, Priāmus, 2 m.
price, pretium, 2 n.
priest, sacerdos, ōtis, 3 m.
priestess, sacerdos, ōtis, 3 f.
princely, impēratōrius, a, um.
probable, verī-similis, e.
Procas, Prōcas, ae, 1 m.
procure, to, *pāro, aui, atum, 1.*
prodigy, prōdigium, 2 n.
prohibit, to, *prōhibeo, ui, itum, 2.*
promise, to, *polliceor, pollicitus sum, 2 dep.*
property, bona, orum, 2 n. pl.
propitious, prōpitius, a, um.
prudence, prudentia, 1 f.
prudent, prudens, ntis.
prudently, prudenter.
Publius Servilius, Publius Servilius, 2 m.
Publius Sulla, Publius Sulla, gen. Publii Sullae.
Publius Sulpicius, Publius Sulpicius, 2 m.
Punic, Pūnicus, a, um.
punish, to, *pūnio, iui, itum, 4.*
punishment, supplicium, 2 n.
pupil, discipulus, 2 m.
put-to-death, to, *interficio, feci, factum, 3.*
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, 2 m.
Pythagoras, Pythāgoras, ae, 1 m.
Pythius, Pythius, 2 m.

Q

Quadruped, quadrupes, pēdis, 3 c.
quæstor, quæstor, ōris, 3 m.
queen, rēgina, 1 f.
Quinctius, Quinctius, 2 m.

REPROACH.

R

Race, gēnus, ōris, 3 n.
raise, to, *tollo, sustūli, sublatum, tollere, 3 irreg.*
rampart, vallum, 2 n.
rank, nobilitas, ātis, 3 f.
read, to, *lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.*
ready, pārātus, a, um.
reason, rātio, ōnis, 3 f. (Ex. 33); causa, 1 f. (Ex. 56).
rebuild, to, *restituō, ui, utum, 3.*
recal, to, *rēvōco, aui, atum, 1.*
receive, to, *accipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.*
recently, nuper.
recklessness, tēmēritas, ātis, 3 f.
recollection, mēmōria, 1 f.
recover, to, *reficio, feci, factum, 3 (Ex. 51); recipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3 (Ex. 53).
rectitude, rectum, 2 n.
reign, to, *regno, aui, atum, 1.*
rejoice, to, *gaudeo, gavisus sum, 2.*
relate, to, *narro, aui, atum, 1.*
relative, propinquus, 2 m.
relieve, to, *sēdo, aui, atum, 1.*
religion, religio, ōnis, 3 f.
remain, to, *māneo, si, sum, 2 (Ex. 7); mōror, atus sum, 1 dep. (Ex. 42); remāneo, si, sum (Ex. 58).
remarkable, singulāris, e.
remedy, mēdicina, 1 f.
remember, to, *mēmīni, isse, verb defect.*
remove, to, *migro, aui, atum, 1 (Ex. 22); auferō, abetūli, ablātum, auferre, irreg.*
Remus, Remus, 2 m.
render, to, *reddo, didi, dītum, 3.*
renowned, clārus, a, um.
repair, to, *reficio, feci, factum, 3.*
repents, it, paenitet, uit and itum est, 2 impers.
reply, to, *respondeo, di, sum, 2.*
report, to, *nuntio, aui, atum, 1.*
repose, to, *quiesco, quīēvi, quīētum, 3.*
reproach, opprobrium, 2 n.**

RUN.

require, to, *expeto, iui and ii, itum, 3 (Ex. 29); pos-tulo, aui, atum, 1 (Ex. 52).
resist, to, *resisto, restitli, 3 (with dat.).*
rest, to, *conquiesco, quīēvi, quīētum, 3.*
restore, to, *reddo, didi, dītum, 3.*
retake, to, *recipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.*
retire, to, *cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.*
return, to, (= come back), redeo, ii, itum, 4 (Ex. 16); revertor, versus sum, 3 dep.
return, to, (= give back), reddo, didi, dītum, 3.
revenue, vectigal, ālis, 3 n.
reverence, to, *vereor, veritus sum, 2 dep.; cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3.*
revolution, novae res, gen. novarum rerum, f. pl.
reward, mercēs, ēdis, 3 f. (Ex. 7); praeium, 2 n. (Ex. 29).
Rhea Silvia, Rhea Silvia, 1 f.
rhetoric, rhētorica, 1 f.
Rhine, Rhēnus, 2 m.
Rhodes, Rhōdus, 2 f.
Rhone, Rhōdānus, 2 m.
rich, dives, itis.
riches, divitiæ, arum, 1 f. pl. (Ex. 1); ōpes, um, 3 f. pl. (Ex. 26).
ring, anulus, 2 m.
ripe, mātūrus, a, um.
rise, to, *surgō, surrexi, surrectum, 3 (Ex. 42); ōrior, ortus sum, oriri, 4 dep. (Ex. 43).*
river, flūmen, inis, 3 n.
Roman, (adj.) Rōmānus, a, um.
Romans, Rōmāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
Rome, Rōma, 1 f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, 2 m.
Roscins, Roscius, 2 m.
rose, rōsa, 1 f.
rough, horrens, ntis.
route, to, *fūgo, aui, atum, 1 (Ex. 2); profligo, aui, atum, 1 (Ex. 12).*
royal, rēgius, a, um.
rule, to, *rēgo, xi, ctum, 3 (Ex. 20); impēro, aui, atum, 1 (Ex. 25).*
Rullus, Rullus, 2 m.
rumour, fama, 1 f.
run, to, *curro, cūcurri, cursum, 3.**

RUN.

run, to (*a ditch*), perduco, xi, ctum, 3.
 run-away, to, fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum, 3.
 rural, rusticus, a, um.

S

Sabines, Sabīni, orum, 2 m. pl.
 sad, tristis, e.
 safe, tutus, a, um.
 safety, salus, ūtis, 3 f.
 sail, to, nāvigo, avi, atum, 1.
 sailor, nauta, 1 m.
 salute, to, salūto, avi, atum, 1.
 same, idem, eadem, idem.
 Samnites, Samnites, ium, 3 m. pl.
 Sardinia, Sardīnia, 1 f.
 satisfy, to, satisfacio, fēci, factum, 3 (*with dat.*).
 Satrius, Satrius, 2 m.
 Saturn, Sātūrnus, 2 m.
 saucy, protervus, a, um.
 say, to, dico, xi, ctum, 3 (Ex. 4); trado, didi, ditum, 3 (Ex. 24).
 scatter, to, spargo, si, sum, 3.
 Scaurus, Scaurus, 2 m.
 school, schōla, 1 f.
 science, scientia, 1 f.
 Scipio, Scipio, ōnis, 3 m.
 scout, explorātor, ōris, 3 m.
 sea, mare, is, 3 n.
 second, alter, ūtra, ūtrum (Ex. 6); sēcundus, a, um (Ex. 12).
 see, to, video, vidi, visum, 2.
 seek, to, quaero, sivi, situm, 3 (Ex. 4); pēto, ivi and ii, itum, 3 (Ex. 34).
 seem, to, videor, visus sum, 2 dep.
 seize, to, occūpo, avi, atum, 1.
 seize-on, to, occūpo, avi, atum, 1.
 select, to, deligo, lēgi, lectum, 3.
 sell, to, vendo, didi, ditum, 3.
 Sempronius, Semprōnius, 2 m.
 Sempronius Longus, Semprōnius Longus, 2 m.
 senate, sēnātus, ūs, 4 m.
 senator, sēnātor, ōris, 3 m.
 send, to, mitto, misi, misum,

SINGULAR.

send-for, to, arcesso, ivi, itum, 3.
 send-forward, to, praemitto, misi, misum, 3.
 sense, sensus, ūs, 4 m.
 Sequani, Sequāni, orum, 2 m. pl.
 serpent, serpens, ntis, 3 f.
 servant, minister, tri, 3 m. (Ex. 26); servus, 2 m. (Ex. 30).
 service, usus, ūs, 4 m.
 serviceable, idōneus, a, um.
 sesterce, sestertius, 2 m.
 set, to (*of the sun*), occido, occidi, occāsum, 3.
 set-on-fire, to, incendio, di, sum, 3.
 set-out, to, praeficiācor, profectus sum, 3 dep.
 settle, to, consilio, ui, utum, 3.
 seven, septem.
 seventh, septimus, a, um.
 seventy, septuaginta.
 severe, grāvis, e (Ex. 6); sēvērus, a, um (Ex. 14).
 severity, sēvēritas, ātis, 3 f.
 Sextus Roscius, Sextus Roscius, 2 m.
 shameful, turpis, e.
 shames, it, pudet, ult and itum est, 2 *impers.*
 sharpen, to, actio, ui, utum, 3.
 shattered, quassus, a, um.
 shear, to, tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, 2.
 shed, to, profundo, fūdi, fūsum, 3.
 shepherd, pastor, ōris, 3 m.
 shine, to, luceo, xi, 2.
 shining, splendens, ntis.
 ship, nāvis, is, 3 f.
 short, brēvis, e.
 shortly, brēvi.
 shout, clāmōr, ōris, 3 m.
 show, to, monstro, avi, atum, 1.
 shut, to, claudio, si, sum, 3.
 Sicily, Sicīlia, 1 f.
 sick, aeger, gra, grum.
 side-with, to, adsum, fui, esse (*with dat.*).
 signal, signum, 2 n.
 silent, to be, taceo, ui, itum, 2.
 silver, argentum, 2 n.
 sin, peccātum, 2 n.
 sin, to, pecco, avi, atum, 1.
 sincere, sincērus, a, um.
 sing, to, cāno, cēcini, cantum, 3.
 singular, singulāris, e.

SPARTANS.

sister, sōror, ōris, 3 f.
 sit, to, sēdeo, sēdi, sēcsum, 2.
 six, sex.
 six-hundred, sexcenti, ae, a.
 sixteen, sēdecim.
 size, magnitūdo, inis, 3 f.
 skilful, peritus, a, um.
 skilled, peritus, a, um.
 sky, coelum, 2 n.
 slaughter, to, trāckio, avi, atum, 1.
 slave, servus, 2 m.
 slave-of, to be the, servio, avi and ii, itum, 4 (*with dat.*).
 slay, to, interficio, fēci, fectum, 3 (Ex. 1); occido, di, sum, 3 (Ex. 5); caedo, cēcidi, caesum, 3 (Ex. 29).
 sleep, somnus, 2 m.
 sleep, to, dormio, ivi, itum, 4.
 slight, lēvis, e.
 sloth, ignāvia, 1 f.
 slothful, ignāvus, a, um.
 slumber, somnus, 2 m.
 small, exiguus, a, um.
 snares, insidiae, arum, 1 f. pl.
 snatch-away, to, eripio, ui, eptum, 3.
 snow, nix, nivis, 3 f.
 so, tam, ita.
 so-as, tam-quam.
 Socrates, Sōcrātes, is, 3 m.
 soil, solum, 2 n.
 soldier, milēs, ntis, 3 m.
 Solon, Sōlon, ōnis, 3 m.
 so-many, tot, indecl.
 some, quidam, quādam, quoddam.
 some-day-or-other, aliquando.
 something, aliquid.
 sometime, aliquamdiu.
 sometimes, aliquando (Ex. 27); interdum, nonnunquam (Ex. 65).
 son, filius, 2 m.
 song, carmen, inis, 3 n.
 son-in-law, gēner, ūri, 2 m.
 soon, mox.
 Sophocles, Sōphocles, is, 3 m.
 source, effectrix, icis, 3 f.
 sow, to, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.
 spacious, amplius, a, um.
 span, to, jungo, xi, ctum, 3.
 spare, to, parco, pēperci, parsum, 3 (*with dat.*).
 Sparta, Sparta, 1 f.
 Spartan, (*adj.*) Spartānus, a, um.
 Spartans, Spartāni, orum, 2 m. pl.

SPEAK.

speak, to, loquor, locutus sum, 3 *dep.*
spear, hasta, 1 *f.*
speech, oratio, oris, 3 *f.*
splendid, splendidus, a, um (Ex. 22); magnificus, a, um (Ex. 29).
spoil, praeda, 1 *f.*
spring, ver, veris, 3 *n.*
stain, macula, 1 *f.*
stand, to, sto, steti, statum, stare, 1.
star, stella, 1 *f.*
state, civitas, atis, 3 *f.*
state-of-one's-health, valetudo, inis, 3 *f.*
statue, statua, 1 *f.*
stature, statura, 1 *f.*
stay, to, commoror, atus sum, 1 *dep.*
steel, ferrum, 2 *n.*
step, gradus, us, 4 *m.*
stop, to, maneo, si, sum, 2.
story, fabula, 1 *f.*
strength, robur, oris, 3 *n.* (Ex. 29); vires, ium, 3 *f. pl. of vis.*
strike-down, to, caedo, cecidi, caesum, 3.
strive, to, auctor, nisus and nixus sum, 3 *dep.*
style, to, designo, avi, atum, 1.
subdue, to, subigo, egi, actum, 3.
succour, auxilium, 2 *n.*
succour, to, adsum, fui, esse.
sue-for, to, peto, ivi, itum, 3.
Suessa Pometia, Suessa Pometia, 1 *f.*
suffer, to, patior, passus sum, 3 *dep.*
sufficient, satis, indecl.
suitable, idoneus, a, um.
Sulla, Sulla, 1 *m.*
sum-of-money, pecunia, 1 *f.*
summer, aestas, atis, 3 *f.*
summon, to, convoco, avi, atum, 1.
sun, sol, solis, 3 *m.*
sunset, solis occasus, gen. solis occidens.
suppliant, supplex, icis, 3 *c.*
support, to, sustineo, tinui, tentum, 2.
surpass, to, supero, avi, atum, 1.
surrender, to, trado, didi, ditum, 3.
survive, to, supersum, fui, esse.
swallow, hirundo, inis, 3 *c.*
sweet, dulcis, e (Ex. 3); suavis, e (Ex. 26).
swine, sus, suis, 3 *c.*

THERE.

sword, gladius, 2 *m.* (Ex. 24); ferrum, 2 *n.* (Ex. 40).
Syracusans, Syracusani, orum, 2 *m. pl.*
Syracuse, Syracusae, arum, 1 *f. pl.*

T

Take, to, capio, cepi, captum, 3.
take-a-walk, to, ambulo, avi, atum, 1.
take-away, to, tollo, sustuli, sublatus, tollere, irreg.
take-by-storm, to, expugno, avi, atum, 1.
take-care-of, to, tueor, itus sum, 2 *dep.*
take-part-in, to, intersum, fui, esse (with dat.).
take-possession-of, to, potior, potitus sum, 4 *dep.* (with abl.).
take-the-lead-in, to, praesum, fui, esse (with dat.).
take-up, to, capio, cepi, captum, 3.
talent, ingenium, 2 *n.* (Ex. 27); talentum, 2 *n.* (Ex. 46).
tall, excelsus, a, um.
Tanaquil, Tanaquil, illis, 3 *f.*
Tarentum, Tarentum, 2 *n.*
Tarpeia, Tarpeia, 1 *f.*
Tarquinius Priscus, Tarquinius Priscus, 2 *m.*
Tarquinius, Tarquinius, orum, 2 *m. pl.*
Tarquinius Superbus, Tarquinius Superbus, 2 *m.*
Tarraco, Tarraco, oris, 3 *f.*
Taurus, Taurus, 2 *m.*
teach, to, doceo, ui, ctum, 2.
teacher, praeceptor, oris, 3 *m.*
tear, lacrima, 1 *f.*
tell, to, dico, xi, ctum, 3.
temple, templum, 2 *n.*
ten, decem.
ten (each), deni, ae, a.
territories, fines, ium, 3 *m. pl.*
than, quam.
that (pron.), ille, a, ud; is, ea, id; in order that, ut (conj.).
Thebans, Thebani, orum, 2 *m. pl.*
theft, furtum, 2 *n.*
Themistocles, Themistocles, is, 3 *m.*
thence, inde.
there, ibi.

TRIUMPH.

thick, crassus, a, um.
thief, fur, furis, 3 *m.*
think, to, puto, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 16); cogito, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 28); censeo, ui, sum, 2 (Ex. 59).
thirty, triginta.
thirty-eight, duodequadraginta.
this, hic, haec, hoc.
though, quamvis.
thought, cogitatio, oris, 3 *f.*
three, tres, tres, tris.
three-hundred, trecenti, ae, a.
three-hundredth, trecentesimalis, a, um.
thrifty, parcus, a, um.
through, per (prep. with acc.).
throw-up (a mound), to, exstruo, xi, ctum, 3.
thy (your), tuus, a, um.
Tiberius Gracchus, Tiberius Gracchus, 2 *m.*
till, to, colo, colui, cultum, 3.
time, tempus, oris, 3 *n.*
time (age), aetas, atis, 3 *f.*
timid, timidus, a, um.
Timoleon, Timoleon, ntis, 3 *m.*
Timotheus, Timotheus, 2 *m.*
tires, it, taedet, (pertaesum est), taedere, 2 *impers.*
Titus Ampius, Titus Ampius, 2 *m.*
to, ad (= proceeding to, after verbs of motion).
toil, labor, oris, 3 *m.*
to-morrow, cras.
too-late, serius, compar. of sero (adv.), late.
too-much, nimis, indecl. (Ex. 35); nimius, a, um (Ex. 39).
tooth, dens, ntis, 3 *m.*
toss, to, agito, avi, atum, 1.
towards, versus (put after the word it governs).
tower, turris, is, 3 *f.*
town, oppidum, 2 *n.*
townsman, oppidanus, 2 *m.*
tragedy, tragoedia, 1 *f.*
train-up, to, erudio, vii, ctum, 4.
traitor, proditor, oris, 3 *m.*
tranquil, quietus, a, um.
Trasimene, Trasimenus, 2 *m.*
treachery, proditio, oris, 3 *f.*
treason, proditio, oris, 3 *f.*
Trebia, Trebia, 1 *f.*
tree, arbor, oris, 3 *f.*
tribune, tribunus, 2 *m.*
tried, spectatus, a, um.
triumph, triumphus, 2 *m.*

TROJAN.

Trojan, Trōjānus, a, um.
Troy, Trōja, 1 f.
true, vērus, a, um.
truly, vēre.
truth, vēritas, ātis, 3 f. (Ex. 33); vērum, 2 n. (Ex. 35).
Tullius, Tullius, 2 m.
turn-out, to, ēvādo, si, sum, 3.
tusk, dens, ntis, 3 m. (*lit.* tooth).
twenty, viginti.
two, duo, duae, duo.
two-hundred, dūcenti, ae, a.
two hundred (each), dūcēni, ae, a.
two-years, biennium, 2 n.

U

Ultimately, postremo.
uncertain, incertus, a, um.
understand, to, intellēgo, lexi, lectum, 3.
undertake, to, suscipio, cēpi, ceptum, 3.
unfortunate, infelix, icis.
universe, mundus, 2 m.
unlearned, indoctus, a, um.
unlike, dissimilis, e.
unmindful, immemor, ōris.
unskilled, imperitus, a, um; rudis, e.
uprightness, integritas, atis, 3 f. [*1 dep.*]
urge, to, hortor, atus sum, use, usus, ūs, 4 m.
use, to, utor, usus sum, 3 dep.
useful, utilis, e.
usefulness, utilitas, atis, 3 f.

V

Vain, in, frustra.
Valerius Flaccus, Valērius Flaccus, 2 m.
valour, virtus, ūtis, 3 f. [*1.*]
value, to, aestimo, avi, atum, Veii, Vēii, orum, 2 m. pl.
Venus, Vēnus, ēris, 3 f.
Venusia, Venusia, 1 f.
Verres, Verres, is, 3 m.
very-little, a, paullulum (*with gen.*).
very-many, permulti, ae, a.
very-much, valde.
Vesta, Vesta, 1 f.
Vestal, Vestālis, e.
vexes, it, pīget, ut and itum est, 2 impers.

WHO.

vice, vītiūm, 2 n.
victim, hostia, 1 f.
victor, victor, ōris, 3 m.
victory, victōria, 1 f.
vigilant, vigilans, ntis.
vile, foedus, a, um.
Virgil, Virgilius, 2 m.
virgin, virgo, inis, 3 f.
virtue, virtus, ūtis, 3 f.
voice, vox, vōcis, 3 f.
Vulcan, Vulcānus, 2 m.

W

Wage, to (*of war*), gēro, gessi, gestum, 3. [*1.*]
walk, to, ambulo, avi, atum, wall, mūrus, 2 m.
want, to, vōlo, vōlui, velle, irreg.
want-of-rest, vigilia, 1 f.
wanting, to be, dēsum, fui, esse.
war, bellum, 2 n.
warlike, bellicōsus, a, um; ferox, ocis.
warning, admonitio, ōnis, 3 f.
wary, cautus, a, um.
watch, vigilia, 1 f.
water, aqua, 1 f.
way, via, 1 f.
weakness, infirmitas, ātis, 3 f.
wealthy, opulentus, a, um.
weapon, telum, 2 n.
wear-away, to, cōsumo, psi, ptum, 3.
wearies, it, taedet, 2 impers.
weep, to, fleo, flēvi, flētum, 2.
weight, pondus, ēris, 3 n.
well, bēnē. [*um.*]
well-known, cognitus, a.
well-known, it is, constat, impers.
what-belongs-to-others, aliēnus, a, um.
what-sort-of, quālis, e.
wheat, frumentum, 2 n. (Ex. 26); triticum, 2 n. (Ex. 46).
when, quum.
when? quando?
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
whether-or, utrum—an.
white, albus, a, um (Ex. 14); candidus, a, um (Ex. 49).
whither? quo?
who, qui, quae, quod.
who? quis, quae, quid?

YOUTH.

whole, tōtus, a, um (Ex. 8); ūniversus, a, um (Ex. 11).
why? cur?
wicked, imprōbus, a, um; prāvus, a, um.
wife, uxor, ōris, 3 f. (Ex. 2); conjux, jūgis, 3 f. (Ex. 5).
wild-beast, fēra, 1 f.; *of-wild-beasts*, (*adj.*) fērinus, a, um.
wild-boar, spēr, apri, 2 m.
wind, ventus, 2 m.
wine, vinum, 2 n.
winter, hiems, is, 3 f. [*1.*]
winter, to, hiemo, avi, atum, **winter-quarters**, hiberna, orum, 2 n. pl.
wisdom, sāpientia, 1 f.
wise, sāpiens, ntis.
wish, vōluntas, atis, 3 f.
wish, to, vōlo, vōlui, velle, irreg.
with, cum (*prep. with abl.*).
with-difficulty, vix.
withdraw, to, concēdo, cessi, cessum, 3. [*abl.*]
without, sinē (*prep. with*).
wolf, lūpus, 2 m.
woman, mūlier, eris, 3 f.
wonderful, mirus, a, um.
wont, to be, sōleo, sōlītus sum, 2.
wood, silva, 1 f.
word, verbum, 2 n.
world, mundus, 2 m.
worse, pējor, ōris, neut. pējus.
worship, to, cōlo, cōlui, cultum, 3.
worthless, prāvus, a, um.
wound, vulnus, ēris, 3 n.
wound, to, vulnero, avi, atum, 1.
write, to, scribo, psi, ptum, 3.
writer, scriptor, ōris, 3 m.
wrong, to, vīdō, avi, atum, 1 (Ex. 25); laedo, si, sum, 3 (Ex. 32).

Y

Year, annus, 2 m.
yesterday, hēri.
yet, tāmen.
young-man, adolescens, ntis, 3 m. (Ex. 5); jūvénis, is, 3 m. (Ex. 27).
youth, ādōlescentia, 1 f.
youth (= young men), jūventus, tūtis, 3 f.

50, ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON,
October, 1891.

MR. MURRAY'S LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS.

A Series of Class-books for advanced Scholars.

FORMING A CHAIN OF HISTORY FROM THE EARLIEST AGES
DOWN TO MODERN TIMES.

English History and Literature.

"The great foundation for all useful knowledge we hold, without any doubt, to be the knowledge of the history and literature of our own country. On this ground Mr. Murray is especially strong. We are acquainted with many admirable books on these subjects, issued by various firms of high standing, some of which, such as Mr. Green's and Mr. Bright's, have universally recognized merits; but for the utility and completeness of the course we give the first place to Mr. Murray's series."—*Literary Churchman*.

THE STUDENT'S HUME: A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1688. By DAVID HUME. Incorporating the Researches of recent Historians. **New Edition**, revised, corrected, and continued to the Treaty of Berlin in 1878, by J. S. BREWER, M.A. With Notes, Illustrations, and 7 Coloured Maps and Woodcuts. (830 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

•• Also in Three Parts. 2s. 6d. each.

I. FROM B.C. 55 TO THE DEATH OF RICHARD III., A.D. 1485.

II. HENRY VII. TO THE REVOLUTION, 1688.

III. THE REVOLUTION TO THE TREATY OF BERLIN, 1878.

•• Questions on the "Student's Hume." 12mo. 2s.

THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND. FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII. TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By GEORGE P. MARSH. (538 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. By T. B. SHAW, M.A. (510 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE. Selected from the BEST WRITERS, and arranged Chronologically. By THOS. B. SHAW, M.A. (560 pp.) Post 8vo. 5s.

Scripture and Church History.

THE STUDENT'S OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY.

FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING THE CONNECTION OF THE OLD AND NEW TESTAMENTS. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 30 Maps and Woodcuts. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY.

A History of the Christian Church from the Times of the Apostles to the Reformation. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. 2 vols. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d. each.

PART I.—A.D. 30—1003. (654 pp.) With Woodcuts.

PART II.—A.D. 1003—1614. (744 pp.) With Woodcuts.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH CHURCH HISTORY.

By G. G. PERRY, M.A., Canon of Lincoln. 3 Vols. 7s. 6d. each.

1st Period. From the Planting of the Church in Britain to the Accession of Henry VIII. A.D. 596—1509. (576 pp.)

2nd Period. From the ACCESSION OF HENRY VIII. to the Silencing of Convocation in the EIGHTEENTH CENTURY. (A.D. 1509—1717.) (635 pp.)

3rd Period. From the Accession of the House of Hanover to the Present Time. (A.D. 1717—1884.) (578 pp.)

Ancient History.

THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST.

From the Earliest Times to the Conquests of Alexander the Great, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, and Phœnicia. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (608 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST.

With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With Coloured Maps and Woodcuts. (640 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

* * * *Questions on the "Student's Greece."* 12mo. 2s.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE.

With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. With Coloured Map and Woodcuts. (686 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE TO THE ACCESSION OF COMMODUS, A.D. 180. Post 8vo. [In Preparation.]

THE STUDENT'S GIBBON: AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

By EDWARD GIBBON. Incorporating the Researches of Recent Historians. With 100 Woodcuts. (700 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Europe.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF MODERN EUROPE.

FROM THE CAPTURE OF CONSTANTINOPLE BY THE TURKS, 1453, TO THE TREATY OF BERLIN, 1878. By RICHARD LODGE, M.A., Fellow of B.N.C., Oxford. (800 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

"Mr. Lodge has treated this wide subject in a broad and intelligent spirit. While his pages abound in facts, he has not been content to give a mere crowded summary of events: he presents us with many sound and thoughtful remarks on the tendencies of each of his periods. His grasp is firm and he never loses his way amidst a multitude of details . . . above all, we believe that we are justified in saying that it is minutely accurate."—*Journal of Education*.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF EUROPE DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES. By HENRY HALLAM, LL.D. (650 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

France.

THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE

EARLIEST TIMES TO THE FALL OF THE SECOND EMPIRE. With Notes and Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country. By W. H. JERVIS, M.A. 4 Coloured Maps, and Woodcuts. (760 pp.) 7s. 6d.

Geography and Geology.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY. By CANON BEVAN, M.A. 150 Woodcuts. (710 pp.) 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, AND DESCRIPTIVE. By CANON BEVAN, M.A. With 120 Woodcuts. (684 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S GEOGRAPHY OF BRITISH INDIA, POLITICAL AND PHYSICAL. By GEORGE SMITH, LL.D. With Maps. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY. By SIR CHARLES LYELL. A New Edition, thoroughly revised by PROF. P. MARTIN DUNCAN. With 600 Woodcuts. 9s.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By MARY SOMERVILLE. 7th Edition, corrected and revised. Post 8vo. 9s.

A DICTIONARY OF PLACE NAMES. Giving their Derivations. By C. BLACKIE. With an Introduction by JOHN STUART BLACKIE. Crown 8vo. 7s.

Law and Philosophy.

THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY. With Quotations and References. By WILLIAM FLEMING, D.D. (440 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S EDITION OF AUSTIN'S JURISPRUDENCE. Compiled from the larger work. By ROBERT CAMPBELL. (544 pp.) Post 8vo. 12s.

AN ANALYSIS OF AUSTIN'S JURISPRUDENCE. By GORDON CAMPBELL. (214 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

Dr. Wm. Smith's Smaller Manuals.

These Works have been drawn up for the Lower Forms, at the request of several teachers, who require more elementary books than the **STUDENT'S HISTORICAL MANUALS**.

- A SMALLER SCRIPTURE HISTORY OF THE OLD AND THE NEW TESTAMENT. IN THREE DIVISIONS:—I. Old Testament History. II. Connection of Old and New Testaments. III. New Testament History to A.D. 70. Edited by WM. SMITH. With Coloured Maps and 40 Illustrations. (370 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.**

This book is intended to be used with, and not in the place of, the Bible.

"Students will know the value of Dr. Wm. Smith's larger Scripture History. This abridgment omits nothing of importance, and is presented in such a handy form that it cannot fail to become a valuable aid to the less learned Bible Student."—*People's Magazine*.

- A SMALLER ANCIENT HISTORY OF THE EAST. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE CONQUEST OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (310 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.**

"This book is designed to aid the study of the Scriptures, by placing in their true historical relations those allusions to Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Phœnicia, and the Medo-Persian Empire, which form the background of the history of Israel from Abraham to Nehemiah. The present work is an indispensable adjunct of the 'Smaller Scripture History'; and the two have been written expressly to be used together."

- A SMALLER HISTORY OF GREECE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. By WM. SMITH. With Coloured Maps and 74 Woodcuts. (268 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.**

This history has been drawn up at the request of several teachers, for the use of lower forms' elementary pupils. The table of contents presents a full analysis of the work, and has been so arranged, that the teacher can frame from it **QUESTIONS FOR THE EXAMINATION OF HIS CLASS**, the answers to which will be found in the corresponding pages of the volume.

- A SMALLER HISTORY OF ROME. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With Coloured Map and 70 Woodcuts. (324 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.**

The "Smaller History of Rome" has been written and arranged on the same plan, and with the same object, as the "Smaller History of Greece." Like that work it comprises separate chapters on the institutions and literature of the countries with which it deals.

- A SMALLER CLASSICAL MYTHOLOGY. With Translations from the Ancient Poets, and Questions on the Work. By H. R. LOCKWOOD. With 90 Woodcuts. (300 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.**

This work has been prepared by a lady for the use of schools and young persons of both sexes. In common with many other teachers, she has long felt the want of a consecutive account of the heathen deities, which might safely be placed in the hands of the young, and yet contain all that is generally necessary to enable them to understand the classical allusions they may meet with in prose or poetry, and to appreciate the meanings of works of art.

A carefully prepared set of **QUESTIONS** is appended, the answers to which will be found in the corresponding pages of the volume.

A SMALLER MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.

By CANON BEVAN, M.A. (240 pp.) With Woodcuts. 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"This work has been drawn up chiefly for the lower forms in schools, at the request of several teachers who require for their pupils a more elementary work than the 'Student's Manual of Ancient Geography.' The arrangement of the two works is substantially the same. The more important towns alone are mentioned; the historical notices are curtailed; modern names are introduced only in special cases, either for the purpose of identification or where any noticeable change has occurred; and the quotations from classical works are confined for the most part to such expressions as are illustrative of local peculiarities. A very ample Index is supplied, so that the work may supply the place of a dictionary for occasional reference."

A SMALLER MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY.

By JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A. 16mo. (290 pp.) 2s. 6d.

This "Smaller Manual" has been compiled for pupils who are acquiring for the first time the chief facts of General Geography, and no pains have been spared to render the learner's task as easy and as pleasant as the nature of the subject admits of. Accuracy as to details has been striven after, in order that the young student may have a solid and safe foundation for his future studies in the advanced branches of the Sciences.

"Great pains appear to have been spent on the verification of facts, and the arrangement is a model of good method. Throughout the book there are unmistakable indications of solid, conscientious work, sound judgment, and practical acquaintance with teaching."—*School Guardian*. c

A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLAND. FROM THE

EARLIEST TIMES TO THE YEAR 1887. 28th Edition, Revised and Enlarged. By RICHARD LODGE, M.A. With Coloured Maps and 68 Woodcuts. (400 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

"The most recent authorities have been consulted, and it is confidently believed that the Work will be found to present a careful and trustworthy account of English History for the lower forms in schools, for whose use it is chiefly intended."—*Preface*.

"This little volume is so pregnant with valuable information, that it will enable anyone who reads it attentively to answer such questions as are set forth in the English History Papers in the Indian Civil Service Examinations."—*Reader*.

A SMALLER HISTORY OF ENGLISH LITERATURE:

Giving a Sketch of the Lives of our Chief Writers. By JAMES ROWLEY. (276 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

The important position which the study of English literature is now taking in education has led to the publication of this work, and of the accompanying volume of specimens. Both books have been undertaken at the request of many eminent teachers, and no pains have been spared to adapt them to the purpose for which they are designed—as elementary works to be used in schools. v

SHORT SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE.

Selected from the chief authors and arranged chronologically. By JAMES ROWLEY. With Notes. (368 pp.) 16mo. 3s. 6d.

While the "Smaller History of English Literature" supplies a rapid but trustworthy sketch of the lives of our chief writers, and of the successive influences which imparted to their writings their peculiar character, the present work supplies choice examples of the works themselves, accompanied by all the explanations required for their perfect explanation. The two works are thus especially designed to be used together.

Dr. Wm. Smith's Latin Dictionaries.

"I consider Dr. Wm. Smith's Dictionaries to have conferred a great and lasting service on the cause of classical learning in this country."—Dean LIDDELL.

"I have found Dr. Wm. Smith's Latin Dictionary a great convenience to me. I think that he has been very judicious in what he has omitted, as well as what he has inserted."—Dr. SCOTT.

A COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. BASED ON THE WORKS OF FORCELLINI AND FREUND. With Tables of the Roman Calendar, Measures, Weights, Money, and a DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. and LL.D. (1200 pp.) Medium 8vo. 21st Edition. 16s.

This work aims at performing the same service for the Latin language as Liddell and Scott's Lexicon has done for the Greek. Great attention has been paid to Etymology, in which department especially this work is admitted to maintain a superiority over all existing Latin Dictionaries.

A SMALLER LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY. WITH A SEPARATE DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES, TABLES OF ROMAN MONEYS, &c. 31st Edition. Thoroughly revised and in great part re-written. Edited by DR. WM. SMITH and T. D. HALL, M.A. The Etymological portion by JOHN K. INGRAM, LL.D. Square 12mo. 7s. 6d.

This edition of Dr. Smith's 'Smaller Latin-English Dictionary' is to a great extent a new and original Work. Every article has been carefully revised.

A COPIOUS AND CRITICAL ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. Compiled from Original Sources. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. and T. D. HALL, M.A. (970 pp.) Medium 8vo. 5th Edition. 16s.

It has been the object of the Authors of this Work to produce a more complete and more perfect ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY than yet exists, and every article has been the result of original and independent research.

Each meaning is illustrated by examples from the classical writers; and those phrases are as a general rule given in both English and Latin.

A SMALLER ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY. Abridged from the above Work, by DR. WM. SMITH and T. D. HALL, M.A., for the use of Junior Classes. 14th Edition. (730 pp.) Square 12mo. 7s. 6d.

"An English-Latin Dictionary worthy of the scholarship of our age and country. It will take absolutely the first rank, and be the standard English-Latin Dictionary as long as either tongue endures. Even a general examination of the pages will serve to reveal the minute pains taken to ensure its fulness and philological value, and the work is to a large extent a dictionary of the English language, as well as an English-Latin Dictionary."—*English Churchman*.

A NEW GRADUS AD PARNASSUM.

AN ENGLISH-LATIN GRADUS, OR VERSE DICTIONARY, on a new plan, with carefully selected Epithets and Synonyms, intended to Simplify the Composition of Latin Verses. By A. C. AINGER, M.A., Trinity Coll., Cambridge, and H. G. WINTLE, M.A., Christ Church, Oxford. (450 pp.) Crown 8vo. 9s.

Dr. Wm. Smith's Educational Series.

INTRODUCTION TO THE LATIN COURSE.

THE YOUNG BEGINNER'S FIRST LATIN BOOK:

containing the Rudiments of Grammar, Easy Grammatical Questions and Exercises, with Vocabularies. Being a Stepping Stone to "Principia Latina," Part I., for Young Children. (112 pp.) 12mo. 2s.

THE YOUNG BEGINNER'S SECOND LATIN

BOOK: containing an easy Latin Reading Book, with an Analysis of the Sentences, Notes, and a Dictionary. Being a Stepping Stone to "Principia Latina," Part II., for Young Children. (98 pp.) 12mo. 2s.

THE YOUNG BEGINNER'S THIRD LATIN BOOK.

Easy Exercises on the Latin Syntax, with the Principal Rules of Syntax, Questions, Vocabularies, and an English-Latin Dictionary to the Exercises. 16mo. 2s.

Latin Course.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part I. FIRST LATIN COURSE.

Grammar, Delectus, Exercises, and Vocabularies. (216 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

The main object of this work is to enable a Beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words.

APPENDIX TO PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part I. Containing

Additional Exercises, with Examination Papers. (125 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part II. READING BOOK. An

Introduction to Ancient Mythology, Geography, Roman Antiquities, and History. With Notes and a Dictionary. (268 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part III. POETRY. 1. Easy

Hexameters and Pentameters. 2. Eclogæ Ovidianæ. 3. Prosody and Metre. 4. First Latin Verse Book. (160 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part IV. PROSE COMPOSITION.

Rules of Syntax, with Examples, Explanations of Synonyms, and Exercises on the Syntax. (194 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRINCIPIA LATINA, Part V. SHORT TALES AND

ANECDOTES FROM ANCIENT HISTORY, FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. (102 pp.) 12mo. 3s.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY. Arranged according to

Subjects and Etymology; with a Latin-English Dictionary to Phædrus, Cornelius Nepos, and Cæsar's "Gallic War." (190 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR. FOR THE

USE OF COLLEGES AND THE HIGHER FORMS IN SCHOOLS. By WM. SMITH, LL.D. and T. D. HALL. *Thirteenth Edition, thoroughly revised and partly re-written.* (450 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR. FOR THE MIDDLE AND

LOWER FORMS. *New and thoroughly revised Edition.* (260 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

TACITUS, GERMANIA, AGRICOLA, AND FIRST BOOK OF

THE ANNALS. With English Notes. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

. Keys may be had by AUTHENTICATED TEACHERS on application.

Greek Course.

INITIA GRÆCA, Part I. A FIRST GREEK COURSE, containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, and Vocabularies. (284 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

. *The present Edition has been very thoroughly revised, and many additions and improvements have been introduced.*

The great object of this work, as of the "*Principia Latina*," is to make the study of the language as easy and simple as possible, by giving the grammatical forms only as they are wanted, and by enabling the pupil to translate from Greek into English and from English into Greek as soon as he has learnt the Greek characters and the First Declension. For the convenience of teachers the cases of the nouns, &c., are given according to the ordinary grammars as well as according to the arrangement of the Public Schools Latin Primer.

APPENDIX TO INITIA GRÆCA, Part I. Containing Additional Exercises, with Examination Papers and Easy Reading Lessons with the Sentences Analysed, serving as an Introduction to *INITIA GRÆCA, Part II.* (110 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA, Part II. A READING BOOK. Containing short Tales, Anecdotes, Fables, Mythology, and Grecian History. With a Lexicon. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

INITIA GRÆCA, Part III. PROSE COMPOSITION. Containing the Rules of Syntax, with Copious Examples and Exercises. (202 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR. FOR THE HIGHER FORMS. By PROFESSOR CURTIUS. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. (386 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

The Greek Grammar of Dr. Curtius is acknowledged by the most competent scholars to be the best representative of the present advanced state of Greek scholarship. It is, indeed, almost the only Grammar which exhibits the inflexions of the language in a really scientific form; while its extensive use in schools, and the high commendations it has received from practical teachers, are a sufficient proof of its excellence as a school-book. It is surprising to find that many of the public and private schools in this country continue to use Grammars which ignore all the improvements and discoveries of modern philology.

A SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR. FOR THE MIDDLE AND LOWER FORMS. Abridged from the above Work. (220 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

THE GREEK ACCIDENCE. Extracted from the above Work. (125 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

PLATO: THE APOLOGY OF SOCRATES, THE CRITO, AND PART OF THE PHÆDO: with Notes in English from STALLBAUM, SCHLEIERMACHER'S Introductions. (242 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

. *Keys may be had by AUTHENTICATED TEACHERS on application.*

French Course.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, Part I. A FIRST FRENCH COURSE, containing Grammar, Delectus and Exercises, with Vocabularies and Materials for French Conversation. (202 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

This work has been compiled at the repeated request of numerous teachers who, finding the "*Principia Latina*" and "*Initia Græca*" the easiest books for learning Latin and Greek, are anxious to obtain equally elementary French books on the same plan. There is an obvious gain in studying a new language on the plan with which the learner is already familiar. The main object is to enable a beginner to acquire an accurate knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of words useful in conversation as well as in reading.

APPENDIX TO FRENCH PRINCIPIA, Part I. Containing Additional Exercises and Examination Papers. (110 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, Part II. A READING BOOK.

Containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the History of France. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and copious Etymological Dictionary. (376 pp.) 12mo. 4s. 6d.

FRENCH PRINCIPIA, Part III. PROSE COMPOSITION.

Containing a Systematic Course of Exercises on the Syntax, with the Principal Rules of Syntax. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

THE STUDENT'S FRENCH GRAMMAR: PRACTICAL AND HISTORICAL. FOR THE HIGHER FORMS. By C. HERON-WALL, with INTRODUCTION by M. LITTRÉ. (490 pp.) Post 8vo. 6s.

This Grammar is the work of a practical teacher of twenty years' experience in teaching English boys. It has been his special aim to produce a book which would work well in schools where Latin and Greek form the principal subjects of study.

"This book as a whole is quite a monument of French Grammar, and cannot fail to become a standard work in high-class teaching."—*School Board Chronicle*.

"It would be difficult to point more clearly to the value of Mr. Wall's work, which is intended for the use of Colleges and Upper Forms in schools, than by quoting what M. Littré says of it in an introductory letter:—"I have carefully tested the principal parts of your work, and have been completely satisfied with the accuracy and correctness which I found there."—*Saturday Review*.

A SMALLER FRENCH GRAMMAR. FOR THE MIDDLE AND LOWER FORMS. Abridged from the above Work. (230 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

* Keys may be had by AUTHENTICATED TEACHERS on application.

German Course.

GERMAN PRINCIPIA, Part I. A FIRST GERMAN COURSE. Containing Grammar, Delectus, Exercises, Vocabularies and materials for German Conversation. (244 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

*. The present edition has undergone a very careful revision, and various improvements and additions have been introduced.

This work is on the same plan as the "French Principia," and therefore requires no further description, except in one point. Differing from the ordinary grammars, all German words are printed in Roman, and not in the old German characters. The Roman letters are used by many modern German writers, and also in Grimm's great Dictionary and Grammar; and it is believed that this alteration will facilitate, more than at first might be supposed, the acquisition of the language. But at the same time, as many German books continue to be printed in the German characters, the exercises are printed in both German and Roman letters.

GERMAN PRINCIPIA, Part II. A READING BOOK.

Containing Fables, Stories, and Anecdotes, Natural History, and Scenes from the History of Germany. With Grammatical Questions, Notes, and Dictionary. (272 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR. With a Sketch of the Historical Development of the Language and its Principal Dialects. (240 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*. Keys may be had by AUTHENTICATED TEACHERS on application.

Italian Course.

ITALIAN PRINCIPIA, Part I. A FIRST ITALIAN COURSE. Containing a Grammar, Delectus, Exercise Book, with Vocabularies, &c. By SIGNOR RICCI, Professor of Italian at the City of London School. (288 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

ITALIAN PRINCIPIA, Part II. A FIRST ITALIAN READING-BOOK, containing Fables, Anecdotes, History, and Passages from the best Italian Authors, with Questions, Notes, and an Etymological Dictionary. By SIGNOR RICCI. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

*. Keys may be had by AUTHENTICATED TEACHERS on application.

English Course.

A READABLE ENGLISH DICTIONARY. Etymologically arranged. By DAVID MILNE, M.A. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

"An excellent book. . . . We gladly allow that its contents justify the title. . . . It is sound matter very skilfully arranged."—*Fall Mall Gazette*.

"Mr. Milne has, we think, in his new Readable English Dictionary, hit the right nail on the head. . . . We have no hesitation in pronouncing his Dictionary to be one of the most entertaining and instructive and readable books of the season."—*Bookseller*.

English Course—continued.

- A PRIMARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR** for Elementary Schools. With 134 Exercises and carefully graduated parsing lessons. By T. D. HALL, M.A. (120 pp.) 16mo. 1s.

This Work aims at the clearest and simplest statement possible of the first principles of English Grammar for the use of children from about eight to twelve years of age.

"We doubt whether any grammar of equal size could give an introduction to the English language more clear, concise, and full than this."—*Watchman*.

- A SCHOOL MANUAL OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.** With 194 Exercises. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L., and T. D. HALL, M.A. With Appendices. Eighth Edition, carefully revised. (270 pp.) Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

This Work has been prepared with a special view to the requirements of Schools in which English, as a *living language*, is systematically taught, and differs from most modern grammars in its thoroughly practical character. A distinguishing feature of the book is the constant appeal for every usage to the authority of Standard English Authors.

"An admirable English Grammar. We cannot give it higher praise than to say that as a school grammar it is the best in this country. There is a more complete and systematic treatment of Syntax than in any other works of the kind. It is a work thoroughly well done."—*English Churchman*.

* * * Keys may be had by AUTHENTICATED TEACHERS on application.

- A MANUAL OF ENGLISH COMPOSITION.** With Copious Illustrations and Practical Exercises. Suited equally for Schools and for Private Students of English. By T. D. HALL, M.A. Fourth Edition. (210 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

"Mr. Hall's 'Manual' is certainly the most sensible and practical book upon English composition that we have lately seen. The great variety of subjects which it suggests as themes for exercising the imagination as well as the literary powers of young students will be found a great assistance to teachers, who must often be sorely puzzled to hit upon subjects sufficiently diversified without being ridiculously beyond the scope of youthful experience."—*Saturday Review*.

- A PRIMARY HISTORY OF BRITAIN** for Elementary Schools. Edited by WM. SMITH, D.C.L. and LL.D. With a Map. (430 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

A New and thoroughly revised Edition, continued down to 1880, with a new chapter on the *British Empire and Constitution*.

Without at all breaking up the continuity of the narrative, the paragraphs are now supplied with headings in distinctive type, serving at once to catch the pupil's eye and impress his memory, and to suggest to the teacher questions for Examination.

- A SCHOOL MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY.** PHYSICAL AND POLITICAL. By JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A. (400 pp.) Post 8vo. 5s.

This work has been drawn up for Middle Forms in Public Schools, Ladies' Colleges, Training Colleges, Assistant and Pupil Teachers, Middle Class and Commercial Schools, and Civil Service Examinations.

"It fully sustains the high reputation of Mr. Murray's series of school manuals, and we venture to predict for it a wide popularity. Bearing in mind its high character, it is a model of cheapness."—*School Guardian*.

- A SMALLER MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY.** FOR SCHOOLS AND YOUNG PERSONS. By JOHN RICHARDSON, M.A. (290 pp.) 16mo. 2s. 6d.

"Great pains appear to have been spent on the verification of facts, and the arrangement is a model of good method. Throughout the book there are unmistakable indications of solid, conscientious work, sound judgment, and practical acquaintance with teaching."—*School Guardian*.

Eton College Books.

THE ETON LATIN GRAMMAR. An entirely New Work. For use in the Higher Forms. By FRANCIS HAY RAWLINS, M.A., and WILLIAM RALPH INGE, M.A., Fellows of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Masters at Eton College. (396 pp.) Crown 8vo. 6s.

THE ETON ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. For Use in the Lower Forms. Compiled with the sanction of the Headmaster. By C. A. AINGER, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge, and H. G. WINTLE, M.A., Christ Church, Oxford, Assistant Masters at Eton College. (327 pp.) Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ETON PREPARATORY GRAMMAR. Abridged from the above Work. (108 pp.) Post 8vo. 2s.

***THE ETON FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK.** Adapted to the Eton Latin Grammar. (152 pp.) Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

THE ETON FOURTH FORM OVID. Being Easy Passages selected from the ELEGIAC POEMS of OVID and TIBULLUS. With Explanatory Notes. By H. G. WINTLE. (155 pp.) Post 8vo. 2s. 6d.

THE ETON HORACE. THE ODES, EPODES, AND CARMEN SÆCULARE. With Notes. By F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton College. With Maps. (380 pp.) Crown 8vo. 6s.

THE ETON MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

I. ***ETON EXERCISES IN ALGEBRA.** By E. P. ROUSE and A. COCKSHOTT. Crown 8vo. 3s.

II. ***ETON EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC.** By REV. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant Master at Eton College. Crown 8vo. 3s.

* Keys may be purchased by Authenticated Teachers on written application to the Publisher.

Natural Philosophy and Science.

WORKS BY SAMUEL NEWTH, M.A., D.D.

Specially adapted to the Regulations of the Examinations of the University of London.

FIRST BOOK OF NATURAL PHILOSOPHY, an Introduction to the Study of Statics, Dynamics, Hydrostatics, Light, Heat, and Sound, with Examples. (200 pp.) 3s. 6d.

ELEMENTS OF MECHANICS, INCLUDING HYDROSTATICS. With numerous Examples. (362 pp.) 8s. 6d.

MATHEMATICAL EXAMPLES. A Graduated Series of Elementary Examples in Arithmetic, Algebra, Logarithms, Trigonometry, and Mechanics. (378 pp.) 8s. 6d.

University Extension Manuals.

This Series of Works is published under the Editorship of Professor KNIGHT, of the University of St. Andrews, and are primarily designed to aid the University Extension Movement throughout the country, and to supply the need so widely felt by Students, of Text-books for study and reference, in connection with the authorised Courses of Lectures.

The Manuals will be issued simultaneously in England and America. Volumes dealing with separate Sections of Literature, Science, Philosophy, History, and Art have already been assigned to representative literary men, to University Professors, or to Extension Lectures connected with the Universities of Oxford, Cambridge, London, Scotland, and Ireland.

The following are just ready :—

THE FINE ARTS. By PROFESSOR BALDWIN BROWN, University of Edinburgh. With Illustrations. 3s. 6d.

ENGLISH COLONIZATION AND EMPIRE. By A. CALDECOTT, Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Maps and Plans. 3s. 6d.

THE USE AND ABUSE OF MONEY. By DR. W. CUNNINGHAM, Fellow of Trin. Coll. Cambridge, Professor of Economic Science, King's College, London. 3s.

THE PHILOSOPHY OF THE BEAUTIFUL. By PROFESSOR KNIGHT, University of St. Andrews. 3s. 6d.

*. * A Prospectus containing full particulars will be forwarded on application to MR. MURRAY.

Standard School Books.

A CHILD'S FIRST LATIN BOOK. COMPRISING NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES, WITH THE VERBS. With ample and varied Practice of the easiest kind. Both old and new order of Cases given. By T. D. HALL, M.A. (124 pp.) New and Enlarged Edition, including the Passive Verb. 16mo. 2s.

The speciality of this book lies in its presenting a great variety of *vivâ voce* work for class-room practice, designed to render the young beginner thoroughly familiar with the use of the Grammatical forms.

KING EDWARD VI.'S LATIN GRAMMAR; or, An Introduction to the Latin Tongue. (324 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

KING EDWARD VI.'S FIRST LATIN BOOK. ACCIDENCE, SYNTAX AND PROSODY. (220 pp.) 12mo. 2s. 6d.

OXENHAM'S ENGLISH NOTES FOR LATIN ELEGIACS. (156 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

HUTTON'S PRINCIPIA GRÆCA. AN INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF GREEK. * A Grammar, Delectus and Exercise Book, with Vocabularies. (154 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

A PRACTICAL AND CONVERSATIONAL DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH, FRENCH, AND GERMAN LANGUAGES, containing numerous colloquial phrases and idioms. By G. F. CHAMBERS. (730 pp.) 16mo. 6s.

LEATHES' HEBREW GRAMMAR. With the Hebrew Text of Genesis i.—vi., and Psalms i.—vi. Grammatical Analysis and Vocabulary. (252 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Mrs. Markham's Histories.

"Mrs. Markham's Histories are constructed on a plan which is novel and we think well chosen, and we are glad to find that they are deservedly popular, for they cannot be too strongly recommended."—*JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.*

HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE FIRST INVASION BY THE ROMANS. *New and revised edition.* Continued down to 1880. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 100 Woodcuts. (528 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

"Mrs. Markham's 'History of England' is the best history for the young that ever appeared, and is far superior to many works of much higher pretensions. It is well written, well informed, and marked by sound judgment and good sense, and is moreover extremely interesting. I know of no history used in any of our public schools at all comparable to it."—*QQ in Notes and Queries.*

HISTORY OF FRANCE, FROM THE CONQUEST OF GAUL BY JULIUS CÆSAR. *New and revised edition.* Continued down to 1878. With Conversations at the end of each Chapter. With 70 Woodcuts. (550 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

"Mrs. Markham's Histories are well known to all those engaged in the instruction of youth. They are deservedly very popular; and we have been given to understand, in proof of this assertion, that of her Histories many thousand copies have been sold."—*Bell's Messenger.*

HISTORY OF GERMANY, FROM ITS INVASION BY MARIUS. *New and revised edition.* Continued down to 1880. With 50 Woodcuts. (460 pp.) 12mo. 3s. 6d.

"A very valuable compendium of all that is most important in German History. The facts have been accurately and laboriously collected from authentic sources, and they are lucidly arranged so as to invest them with the interest which naturally pertains to them."—*Evangelical Magazine.*

LITTLE ARTHUR'S HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By LADY CALLCOTT. *New and revised edition.* Continued down to 1878. 500th thousand. With 36 Woodcuts. 16mo. 1s. 6d.

"I never met with a history so well adapted to the capacities of children or their entertainment, so philosophical, and written with such simplicity."—*Mrs. MARCETT.*

LITTLE ARTHUR'S HISTORY OF FRANCE. FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE FALL OF THE SECOND EMPIRE. With Map and Illustrations. 16mo. 2s. 6d.

"The jaded schoolboy, surfeited with tales and the 'over-pressure' arising from long attention to lives and adventures, will, towards the latter part of his holiday, turn with some relief to this book, and begin feasting afresh. Those who know what 'Little Arthur's England' did to popularise the subject among little folks, will know what to expect in this 'France.' The book is capitally illustrated, and very wisely the compiler does not reject the exciting and legendary parts of the subject."—*Schoolmaster.*

ÆSOP'S FABLES. A NEW VERSION. Chiefly from the Original Sources. By REV. THOMAS JAMES. With 100 Woodcuts. (168 pp.) Post 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"Of ÆSOP'S FABLES there ought to be in every school many copies, full of pictures."—*Fraser's Magazine.*

THE BIBLE IN THE HOLY LAND. Extracted from Dean Stanley's work on Sinai and Palestine. With Woodcuts. (210 pp.) Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SERMONS FOR CHILDREN PREACHED IN WESTMINSTER ABBEY. By DEAN STANLEY. Post 8vo. 3s. 6d.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

Bradbury, Agnew, & Co. Limd.]

[Printers, Whitefriars.

